

# Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

Draft dated December 18, 2015

Supersedes the Seismic Provisions  
for Structural Steel Buildings  
dated June 22, 2010,  
and all previous versions

Approved by the  
AISC Committee on Specifications



**AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION**  
One East Wacker Drive, Suite 700  
Chicago, Illinois 60601-1802

Copyright © 2016

by American Institute of Steel Construction

All rights reserved. This book or any part thereof must not be reproduced in any form without the written permission of the publisher.

The AISC logo is a registered trademark of AISC.

The information presented in this publication has been prepared in accordance with recognized engineering principles. While it is believed to be accurate, this information should not be used or relied upon for any specific application without competent professional examination and verification of its accuracy, suitability and applicability by a licensed professional engineer, designer or architect. The publication of the material contained herein is not intended as a representation or warranty on the part of the American Institute of Steel Construction or of any other person named herein, that this information is suitable for any general or particular use or of freedom from infringement of any patent or patents. Anyone making use of this information assumes all liability arising from such use.

Caution must be exercised when relying upon other standards and codes developed by other bodies and incorporated by reference herein since such material may be modified or amended from time to time subsequent to the printing of this edition. The Institute bears no responsibility for such material other than to refer to it and incorporate it by reference at the time of the initial publication of this edition.

Printed in the United States of America

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### SYMBOLS

### GLOSSARY

### ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

### PROVISIONS

#### A. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A1. Scope
- A2. Referenced Specifications, Codes and Standards
- A3. Materials
  - 1. Material Specifications
  - 2. Expected Material Strength
  - 3. Heavy Sections
  - 4. Consumables for Welding
    - 4a. Seismic Force-Resisting System Welds
    - 4b. Demand Critical Welds
  - 5. Concrete and Steel Reinforcement
- A4. Structural Design Drawings and Specifications
  - 1. General
  - 2. Steel Construction
  - 3. Composite Construction

#### B. GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- B1. General Seismic Design Requirements
- B2. Loads and Load Combinations
- B3. Design Basis
  - 1. Required Strength
  - 2. Available Strength
- B4. System Type
- B5. Diaphragms, Chords and Collectors
  - 1. General
  - 2. Truss Diaphragms

#### C. ANALYSIS

- C1. General Requirements
- C2. Additional Requirements
- C3. Nonlinear Analysis

#### D. GENERAL MEMBER AND CONNECTION DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- D1. Member Requirements
  - 1. Classification of Sections for Ductility

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| 115 | 1a. Section Requirements for Ductile Members          |
| 116 | 1b. Width-to-Thickness Limitations of Steel and       |
| 117 | Composite Sections                                    |
| 118 | 2.Stability Bracing of Beams                          |
| 119 | 2a. Moderately Ductile Members                        |
| 120 | 2b. Highly Ductile Members                            |
| 121 | 2c. Special Bracing at Plastic Hinge Locations        |
| 122 | 3.Protected Zones                                     |
| 123 | 4.Columns   |
| 124 | 4a. Required Strength                                 |
| 125 | 4b. Encased Composite Columns                         |
| 126 | 4c. Filled Composite Columns                          |
| 127 | 5.Composite Slab Diaphragms                           |
| 128 | 5a. Load Transfer                                     |
| 129 | 5b. Nominal Shear Strength                            |
| 130 | 6. Built-up Structural Steel Members                  |
| 131 | D2. Connections                                       |
| 132 | 1.General   |
| 133 | 2.Bolted Joints                                       |
| 134 | 3.Welded Joints                                       |
| 135 | 4.Continuity Plates and Stiffeners                    |
| 136 | 5.Column Splices                                      |
| 137 | 5a. Location of Splices                               |
| 138 | 5b. Required Strength                                 |
| 139 | 5c. Required Shear Strength                           |
| 140 | 5d. Structural Steel Splice Configurations            |
| 141 | 5e. Splices in Encased Composite Columns              |
| 142 | 6.Column Bases  |
| 143 | 6a. Required Axial Strength                           |
| 144 | 6b. Required Shear Strength                           |
| 145 | 6c. Required Flexural Strength                        |
| 146 | 7.Composite Connections                               |
| 147 | 8.Steel Anchors                                       |
| 148 | D3. Deformation Compatibility of Non-SFRS Members and |
| 149 | Connections   |
| 150 | D4. H-Piles   |
| 151 | 1.Design Requirements                                 |
| 152 | 2.Battered H-Piles                                    |
| 153 | 3.Tension   |
| 154 | 4.Protected Zone                                      |

## 156 E. MOMENT-FRAME SYSTEMS

|     |                                  |
|-----|----------------------------------|
| 157 | E1. Ordinary Moment Frames (OMF) |
| 158 | 1.Scope                          |
| 159 | 2.Basis of Design                |
| 160 | 3.Analysis                       |

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| 161 | 4.System Requirements                               |
| 162 | 5.Members   |
| 163 | 5a. Basic Requirements                              |
| 164 | 5b. Protected Zones                                 |
| 165 | 6.Connections                                       |
| 166 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                           |
| 167 | 6b. FR Moment Connections                           |
| 168 | 6c. PR Moment Connections                           |
| 169 | E2. Intermediate Moment Frames (IMF)                |
| 170 | 1.Scope   |
| 171 | 2.Basis of Design                                   |
| 172 | 3.Analysis  |
| 173 | 4.System Requirements                               |
| 174 | 4a. Stability Bracing of Beams                      |
| 175 | 5.Members   |
| 176 | 5a. Basic Requirements                              |
| 177 | 5b. Beam Flanges                                    |
| 178 | 5c. Protected Zones                                 |
| 179 | 6.Connections                                       |
| 180 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                           |
| 181 | 6b. Beam-to-Column Connection Requirements          |
| 182 | 6c. Conformance Demonstration                       |
| 183 | 6d. Required Shear Strength                         |
| 184 | 6e. Panel Zone                                      |
| 185 | 6f. Continuity Plates                               |
| 186 | 6g. Column Splices                                  |
| 187 | E3. Special Moment Frames (SMF)                     |
| 188 | 1.Scope   |
| 189 | 2.Basis of Design                                   |
| 190 | 3.Analysis  |
| 191 | 4.System Requirements                               |
| 192 | 4a. Moment Ratio                                    |
| 193 | 4b. Stability Bracing of Beams                      |
| 194 | 4c. Stability Bracing at Beam-to-Column Connections |
| 195 | 5.Members   |
| 196 | 5a. Basic Requirements                              |
| 197 | 5b. Beam Flanges                                    |
| 198 | 5c. Protected Zones                                 |
| 199 | 6.Connections                                       |
| 200 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                           |
| 201 | 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections                      |
| 202 | 6c. Conformance Demonstration                       |
| 203 | 6d. Required Shear Strength                         |
| 204 | 6e. Panel Zone                                      |
| 205 | 6f. Continuity Plates                               |
| 206 | 6g. Column Splices                                  |

- 207 E4. Special Truss Moment Frames (STMF)
- 208 1.Scope
- 209 2.Basis of Design
- 210 3.Analysis
- 211 3a. Special Segment
- 212 3b. Nonspecial Segment
- 213 4.System Requirements
- 214 4a. Special Segment
- 215 4b. Stability Bracing of Trusses
- 216 4c. Stability Bracing of Truss-to-Column Connections
- 217 4d. Stiffness of Stability Bracing
- 218 5.Members
- 219 5a. Basic Requirements
- 220 5b. Special Segment Members
- 221 5c. Expected Vertical Shear Strength of Special
- 222 Segment
- 223 5d. Width-to-Thickness Limitations
- 224 5e. Built-Up Chord Members
- 225 5f. Protected Zones
- 226 6.Connections
- 227 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 228 6b. Connections of Diagonal Web Members in the
- 229 Special Segment
- 230 6c. Column Splices
- 231 E5. Ordinary Cantilever Column Systems (OCCS)
- 232 1.Scope
- 233 2.Basis of Design
- 234 3.Analysis
- 235 4.System Requirements
- 236 4a. Columns
- 237 4b. Stability Bracing of Columns
- 238 5.Members
- 239 5a. Basic Requirements
- 240 5b. Column Flanges
- 241 5c. Protected Zones
- 242 6.Connections
- 243 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 244 6b. Column Bases
- 245 E6. Special Cantilever Column Systems (SCCS)
- 246 1.Scope
- 247 2.Basis of Design
- 248 3.Analysis
- 249 4.System Requirements
- 250 4a. Columns
- 251 4b. Stability Bracing of Columns
- 252 5.Members

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| 253 | 5a. Basic Requirements                        |
| 254 | 5b. Column Flanges                            |
| 255 | 5c. Protected Zones                           |
| 256 | 6. Connections                                |
| 257 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                     |
| 258 | 6b. Column Bases                              |
| 259 |   |
| 260 | <b>F. BRACED - FRAME AND SHEAR - WALL</b>     |
| 261 | <b>SYSTEMS</b>                                |
| 262 | F1. Ordinary Centrically Braced Frames (OCBF) |
| 263 | 1. Scope                                      |
| 264 | 2. Basis of Design                            |
| 265 | 3. Analysis                                   |
| 266 | 4. System Requirements                        |
| 267 | 4a. V-Braced and Inverted V-Braced Frames     |
| 268 | 4b. K-Braced Frames                           |
| 269 | 4c. Multi-tiered Braced Frames                |
| 270 | 5. Members                                    |
| 271 | 5a. Basic Requirements                        |
| 272 | 5b. Slenderness                               |
| 273 | 5c. Beams                                     |
| 274 | 6. Connections                                |
| 275 | 6a. Brace Connections                         |
| 276 | 7. Ordinary Centrically Braced Frames above   |
| 277 | Seismic Isolation Systems                     |
| 278 | 7a. System Requirements                       |
| 279 | 7b. Members                                   |
| 280 | F2. Special Centrically Braced Frames (SCBF)  |
| 281 | 1. Scope                                      |
| 282 | 2. Basis of Design                            |
| 283 | 3. Analysis                                   |
| 284 | 4. System Requirements                        |
| 285 | 4a. Lateral Force Distribution                |
| 286 | 4b. V- and Inverted V-Braced Frames           |
| 287 | 4c. K-Braced Frames                           |
| 288 | 4d. Tension-Only Frames                       |
| 289 | 4e. Multi-tiered Braced Frames                |
| 290 | 5. Members                                    |
| 291 | 5a. Basic Requirements                        |
| 292 | 5b. Diagonal Braces                           |
| 293 | 5c. Protected Zones                           |
| 294 | 6. Connections                                |
| 295 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                     |
| 296 | 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections                |
| 297 | 6c. Brace Connections                         |
| 298 | 6d. Column Splices                            |

|     |     |  |
|-----|-----|--|
| 299 | F3. | Eccentrically Braced Frames (EBF)        |
| 300 |     | 1.Scope                                  |
| 301 |     | 2.Basis of Design                        |
| 302 |     | 3.Analysis                               |
| 303 |     | 4.System Requirements                    |
| 304 |     | 4a. Link Rotation Angle                  |
| 305 |     | 4b. Bracing of Link                      |
| 306 |     | 5.Members                                |
| 307 |     | 5a. Basic Requirements                   |
| 308 |     | 5b. Links                                |
| 309 |     | 5c. Protected Zones                      |
| 310 |     | 6.Connections                            |
| 311 |     | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                |
| 312 |     | 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections           |
| 313 |     | 6c. Brace Connections                    |
| 314 |     | 6d. Column Splices                       |
| 315 |     | 6e. Link-to-Column Connections           |
| 316 | F4. | Buckling-Restrained Braced Frames (BRBF) |
| 317 |     | 1.Scope                                  |
| 318 |     | 2.Basis of Design                        |
| 319 |     | 2a. Brace Strength                       |
| 320 |     | 2b. Adjustment Factors                   |
| 321 |     | 2c. Brace Deformations                   |
| 322 |     | 3.Analysis                               |
| 323 |     | 4.System Requirements                    |
| 324 |     | 4a. V- and Inverted V-Braced Frames      |
| 325 |     | 4b. K-Braced Frames                      |
| 326 |     | 4c. Lateral Force Distribution           |
| 327 |     | 4d. Multi-tiered Braced Frames           |
| 328 |     | 5.Members                                |
| 329 |     | 5a. Basic Requirements                   |
| 330 |     | 5b. Diagonal Braces                      |
| 331 |     | 5c. Protected Zones                      |
| 332 |     | 6.Connections                            |
| 333 |     | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                |
| 334 |     | 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections           |
| 335 |     | 6c. Diagonal Brace Connections           |
| 336 |     | 6d. Column Splices                       |
| 337 | F5. | Special Plate Shear Walls (SPSW)         |
| 338 |     | 1.Scope                                  |
| 339 |     | 2.Basis of Design                        |
| 340 |     | 3.Analysis                               |
| 341 |     | 4.System Requirements                    |
| 342 |     | 4a. Stiffness of Boundary Elements       |
| 343 |     | 4b. HBE-to-VBE Connection Moment Ratio   |
| 344 |     | 4c. Bracing                              |

- 4d. Openings in Webs
- 5.Members
  - 5a. Basic Requirements
  - 5b. Webs
  - 5c. HBE
  - 5d. Protected Zone
- 6.Connections
  - 6a. Demand Critical Welds
  - 6b. HBE-to-VBE Connections
  - 6c. Connections of Webs to Boundary Elements
  - 6d. Column Splices
- 7.Perforated Webs
  - 7a. Regular Layout of Circular Perforations
  - 7b. Reinforced Corner Cut-Out

## **G. COMPOSITE MOMENT - FRAME SYSTEMS**

- G1. Composite Ordinary Moment Frames (C-OMF)
  - 1.Scope
  - 2.Basis of Design
  - 3.Analysis
  - 4.System Requirements
  - 5.Members
    - 5a. Protected Zones
  - 6.Connections
    - 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- G2. Composite Intermediate Moment Frames (C-IMF)
  - 1.Scope
  - 2.Basis of Design
  - 3.Analysis
  - 4.System Requirements
    - 4a. Stability Bracing of Beams
  - 5.Members
    - 5a. Basic Requirements
    - 5b. Beam Flanges
    - 5c. Protected Zones
  - 6.Connections
    - 6a. Demand Critical Welds
    - 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections
    - 6c. Conformance Demonstration
    - 6d. Required Shear Strength
    - 6e. Connection Diaphragm Plates
    - 6f. Column Splices
- G3. Composite Special Moment Frames (C-SMF)
  - 1.Scope
  - 2.Basis of Design
  - 3.Analysis

- 391 4.System Requirements
- 392 4a. Moment Ratio
- 393 4b. Stability Bracing of Beams
- 394 4c. Stability Bracing at Beam-to-Column Connections
- 395 5.Members
- 396 5a. Basic Requirements
- 397 5b. Beam Flanges
- 398 5c. Protected Zones
- 399 6.Connections
- 400 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 401 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 402 6c. Conformance Demonstration
- 403 6d. Required Shear Strength
- 404 6e. Connection Diaphragm Plates
- 405 6f. Column Splices
- 406 G4. Composite Partially Restrained Moment Frames (C-
- 407 PRMF)
- 408 1.Scope
- 409 2.Basis of Design
- 410 3.Analysis
- 411 4.System Requirements
- 412 5.Members
- 413 5a. Columns
- 414 5b. Beams
- 415 5c. Protected Zones
- 416 6.Connections
- 417 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 418 6b. Required Strength
- 419 6c. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 420 6d. Conformance Demonstration
- 421 6e. Column Splices
- 422

## 423 **H. COMPOSITE BRACED - FRAME AND SHEAR -**

## 424 **WALL SYSTEMS**

- 425 H1. Composite Ordinary Braced Frames (C-OBF)
- 426 1.Scope
- 427 2.Basis of Design
- 428 3.Analysis
- 429 4.System Requirements
- 430 5.Members
- 431 5a. Basic Requirements
- 432 5b. Columns
- 433 5c. Braces
- 434 5d. Protected Zones
- 435 6.Connections
- 436 6a. Demand Critical Welds

- 437 H2. Composite Special Concentrically Braced Frames (C-  
 438 SCBF)  
 439 1.Scope  
 440 2.Basis of Design  
 441 3.Analysis  
 442 4.System Requirements  
 443 5.Members  
 444 5a. Basic Requirements  
 445 5b. Diagonal Braces  
 446 5c. Protected Zones  
 447 6.Connections  
 448 6a. Demand Critical Welds  
 449 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections  
 450 6c. Brace Connections  
 451 6d. Column Splices  
 452 H3. Composite Eccentrically Braced Frames (C-EBF)  
 453 1.Scope  
 454 2.Basis of Design  
 455 3.Analysis  
 456 4.System Requirements  
 457 5.Members  
 458 6.Connections  
 459 6a. Beam-to-Column Connections  
 460 H4. Composite Ordinary Shear Walls (C-OSW)  
 461 1.Scope  
 462 2.Basis of Design  
 463 3.Analysis  
 464 4.System Requirements  
 465 5.Members  
 466 5a. Boundary Members  
 467 5b. Coupling Beams  
 468 5c. Protected Zones  
 469 6.Connections  
 470 6a. Demand Critical Welds  
 471 H5. Composite Special Shear Walls (C-SSW)  
 472 1.Scope  
 473 2.Basis of Design  
 474 3.Analysis  
 475 4.System Requirements  
 476 5.Members  
 477 5a. Ductile Elements  
 478 5b. Boundary Members  
 479 5c. Steel Coupling Beams  
 480 5d. Composite Coupling Beams  
 481 5e. Protected Zones  
 482 6.Connections

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| 483 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                              |
| 484 | 6b. Column Splices                                     |
| 485 | H6. Composite Plate Shear Walls – Concrete Encased (C- |
| 486 | PSW/CE)  |
| 487 | 1.Scope  |
| 488 | 2.Basis of Design                                      |
| 489 | 3.Analysis   |
| 490 | 3a. Webs   |
| 491 | 3b. Other Members and Connections                      |
| 492 | 4.System Requirements                                  |
| 493 | 4a. Steel Plate Thickness                              |
| 494 | 4b. Stiffness of Vertical Boundary Elements            |
| 495 | 4c. HBE-to-VBE Connection Moment Ratio                 |
| 496 | 4d. Bracing  |
| 497 | 4e. Openings in Webs                                   |
| 498 | 5.Members  |
| 499 | 5a. Basic Requirements                                 |
| 500 | 5b. Webs   |
| 501 | 5c. Concrete Stiffening Elements                       |
| 502 | 5d. Boundary Members                                   |
| 503 | 5e. Protected Zones                                    |
| 504 | 6.Connections  |
| 505 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                              |
| 506 | 6b. HBE-to-VBE Connections                             |
| 507 | 6c. Connections of Steel Plate to Boundary Elements    |
| 508 | 6d. Connections of Steel Plate to Reinforced Concrete  |
| 509 | Panel  |
| 510 | 6e. Column Splices                                     |
| 511 |  |
| 512 | H7. Composite Plate Shear Walls – Concrete Filled (C-  |
| 513 | PSW/CF)  |
| 514 | 1.Scope  |
| 515 | 2.Basis of Design                                      |
| 516 | 3.Analysis   |
| 517 | 4.System Requirements                                  |
| 518 | 4a. Steel Web Plate of C-PSW/CF with Boundary          |
| 519 | Elements   |
| 520 | 4b. Steel Plate of C-PSW/CF without Boundary           |
| 521 | Elements   |
| 522 | 4c. Half Circular or Full Circular End of C-PSW/CF     |
| 523 | with Boundary Elements                                 |
| 524 | 4d. Spacing of Tie Bars in C-PSW/CF with or without    |
| 525 | Boundary Elements                                      |
| 526 | 4e. Tie Bar Diameter in C-PSW/CF with or without       |
| 527 | Boundary Elements                                      |
| 528 | 4f. Connection between Tie Bars and Steel Plates       |

- 4g. Connection between C-PSW/CF Steel Components
- 4h. C-PSW/CF and Foundation Connection
- 5. System Requirements
  - 5a. Flexural Strength
  - 5b. Shear Strength

## **I. FABRICATION AND ERECTION**

- I1. Shop and Erection Drawings
  - 1. Shop Drawings for Steel Construction
  - 2. Erection Drawings for Steel Construction
  - 3. Shop and Erection Drawings for Composite Construction
- I2. Fabrication and Erection
  - 1. Protected Zone
  - 2. Bolted Joints
  - 3. Welded Joints
  - 4. Continuity Plates and Stiffeners

## **J. QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- J1. Scope
- J2. Fabricator and Erector Documents
  - 1. Documents to be Submitted for Steel Construction
  - 2. Documents to be Available for Review for Steel Construction
  - 3. Documents to be Submitted for Composite Construction
  - 4. Documents to be Available for Review for Composite Construction
- J3. Quality Assurance Agency Documents
- J4. Inspection and Nondestructive Testing Personnel
- J5. Inspection Tasks
  - 1. Observe (O)
  - 2. Perform (P)
  - 3. Document (D)
  - 4. Coordinated Inspection
- J6. Welding Inspection and Nondestructive Testing
  - 1. Visual Welding Inspection
  - 2. NDT of Welded Joints
    - 2a. CJP Groove Weld NDT
    - 2b. Column Splice and Column to Base Plate PJP Groove Weld NDT
    - 2c. Base Metal NDT for Lamellar Tearing and Laminations
    - 2d. Beam Cope and Access Hole NDT

- 575 2e. Reduced Beam Section Repair NDT
- 576 2f. Weld Tab Removal Sites
- 577 2g. Reduction of Percentage of Ultrasonic Testing
- 578 2h. Reduction of Percentage of Magnetic Particle
- 579 Testing
- 580 J7. Inspection of High-Strength Bolting
- 581 J8. Other Steel Structure Inspections
- 582 J9. Inspection of Composite Structures
- 583 J10. Inspection of H-Piles
- 584

## **K. PREQUALIFICATION AND CYCLIC QUALIFICATION TESTING PROVISIONS**

- 587 K1. Prequalification of Beam-to-Column and Link-to-
- 588 Column Connections
- 589 1. Scope
- 590 2. General Requirements
- 591 2a. Basis for Prequalification
- 592 2b. Authority for Prequalification
- 593 3. Testing Requirements
- 594 4. Prequalification Variables
- 595 4a. Beam and Column Parameters for SMF and IMF,
- 596 Link and Column Parameters for EBF
- 597 4b. Beam and Column Parameters for C-SMF and C-
- 598 IMF
- 599 4c. Beam-to-Column or Link-to-Column Relations
- 600 4d. Continuity and Diaphragm Plates
- 601 4e. Welds
- 602 4f. Bolts
- 603 4g. Reinforcement in C-SMF and C-IMF
- 604 4h. Quality Control and Quality Assurance
- 605 4i. Additional Connection Details
- 606 5. Design Procedure
- 607 6. Prequalification Record
- 608 K2. Cyclic Tests for Qualification of Beam-to-Column and
- 609 Link-to-Column Connections
- 610 1. Scope
- 611 2. Test Subassemblage Requirements
- 612 3. Essential Test Variables
- 613 3a. Sources of Inelastic Rotation
- 614 3b. Members
- 615 3c. Reinforcing Steel Amount, Size and Detailing
- 616 3d. Connection Details
- 617 3e. Continuity Plates
- 618 3f. Steel Strength for Steel Members and Connection
- 619 Elements
- 620 3g. Steel Strength and Grade for Reinforcing Steel

- 3h. Concrete Strength and Density
- 3i. Welded Joints
- 3j. Bolted Joints
- 3k. Load Transfer Between Steel and Concrete
- 4. Loading History
- 4a. General Requirements
- 4b. Loading Sequence for Beam-to-Column Moment Connections
- 4c. Loading Sequence for Link-to-Column Connections
- 5. Instrumentation
- 6. Testing Requirements for Material Specimens
- 6a. Tension Testing Requirements for Structural Steel Material Specimens
- 6b. Tension Testing Requirements for Reinforcing Steel Material Specimens
- 6c. Methods of Tension Testing for Structural and Reinforcing Steel Material Specimens
- 6d. Testing Requirements for Concrete
- 6e. Testing Requirements for Weld Metal Material Specimens
- 7. Test Reporting Requirements
- 8. Acceptance Criteria
- K3. Cyclic Tests for Qualification of Buckling-Restrained Braces
  - 1. Scope
  - 2. Subassemblage Test Specimen
  - 3. Brace Test Specimen
    - 3a. Design of Brace Test Specimen
    - 3b. Manufacture of Brace Test Specimen
    - 3c. Similarity of Brace Test Specimen and Prototype
    - 3d. Connection Details
    - 3e. Materials
    - 3f. Connections
  - 4. Loading History
  - 4a. General Requirements
  - 4b. Test Control
  - 4c. Loading Sequence
  - 5. Instrumentation
  - 6. Materials Testing Requirements
  - 6a. Tension Testing Requirements
  - 6b. Methods of Tension Testing
  - 7. Test Reporting Requirements
  - 8. Acceptance Criteria

## COMMENTARY

### A. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A1. Scope
- A2. Referenced Specifications, Codes and Standards
- A3. Materials
  - 1. Material Specifications
  - 2. Expected Material Strength
  - 3. Heavy Sections
  - 4. Consumables for Welding
  - 5. Concrete and Steel Reinforcement
- A4. Structural Design Drawings and Specifications
  - 1. General
  - 2. Steel Construction
  - 3. Composite Construction

### B. GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- B1. General Seismic Design Requirements
- B2. Loads and Load Combinations
- B3. Design Basis
  - 2. Available Strength
- B5. Diaphragms, Chords and Collectors

### C. ANALYSIS

- C1. General Requirements
- C2. Additional Requirements
- C3. Nonlinear Analysis

### D. GENERAL MEMBER AND CONNECTION DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- D1. Member Requirements
  - 1. Classification of Sections for Ductility
    - 1a. Section Requirements for Ductile Members
    - 1b. Width-to-Thickness Limitations of Steel and Composite Sections
  - 2. Stability Bracing of Beams
    - 2a. Moderately Ductile Members
    - 2b. Highly Ductile Members
  - 2c. Special Bracing at Plastic Hinge Locations
  - 3. Protected Zones
  - 4. Columns
    - 4a. Required Strength
    - 4b. Encased Composite Columns
    - 4c. Filled Composite Columns
  - 5. Composite Slab Diaphragms
  - 6. Built-up Structural Steel Members

- 713 D2. Connections
  - 714 1. General
  - 715 2. Bolted Joints
  - 716 3. Welded Joints
  - 717 4. Continuity Plates and Stiffeners
  - 718 5. Column Splices
    - 719 5a. Location of Splices
    - 720 5b. Required Strength
    - 721 5c. Required Shear Strength
    - 722 5d. Structural Steel Splice Configurations
  - 723 6. Column Bases
    - 724 6a. Required Axial Strength
    - 725 6b. Required Shear Strength
    - 726 6c. Required Flexural Strength
  - 727 7. Composite Connections
  - 728 8. Steel Anchors
- 729 D3. Deformation Compatibility of Non-SFRS Members and
  - 730 Connections
- 731 D4. H-Piles
  - 732 1. Design Requirements
  - 733 2. Battered H-Piles
  - 734 3. Tension
  - 735 4. Protected Zone
  - 736

## 737 E. MOMENT-FRAME SYSTEMS

- 738 E1. Ordinary Moment Frames (OMF)
  - 739 1. Scope
  - 740 2. Basis of Design
  - 741 4. System Requirements
  - 742 5. Members
  - 743 6. Connections
    - 744 6b. FR Moment Connections
    - 745 6c. PR Moment Connections
- 746 E2. Intermediate Moment Frames (IMF)
  - 747 1. Scope
  - 748 2. Basis of Design
  - 749 4. System Requirements
    - 750 4a. Stability Bracing of Beams
  - 751 5. Members
    - 752 5a. Basic Requirements
    - 753 5b. Beam Flanges
    - 754 5c. Protected Zones
  - 755 6. Connections
    - 756 6a. Demand Critical Welds
    - 757 6b. Beam-to-Column Connection Requirements
    - 758 6c. Conformance Demonstration

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| 759 | 6d. Required Shear Strength                          |
| 760 | 6e. Panel Zone                                       |
| 761 | 6f. Continuity Plates                                |
| 762 | 6g. Column Splices                                   |
| 763 | E3. Special Moment Frames (SMF)                      |
| 764 | 1. Scope   |
| 765 | 2. Basis of Design                                   |
| 766 | 3. Analysis  |
| 767 | 4. System Requirements                               |
| 768 | 4a. Moment Ratio                                     |
| 769 | 4b. Stability Bracing of Beams                       |
| 770 | 4c. Stability Bracing at Beam-to-Column Connections  |
| 771 | 5. Members   |
| 772 | 5a. Basic Requirements                               |
| 773 | 5b. Beam Flanges                                     |
| 774 | 5c. Protected Zones                                  |
| 775 | 6. Connections                                       |
| 776 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                            |
| 777 | 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections                       |
| 778 | 6c. Conformance Demonstration                        |
| 779 | 6d. Required Shear Strength                          |
| 780 | 6e. Panel Zone                                       |
| 781 | 6f. Continuity Plates                                |
| 782 | 6g. Column Splices                                   |
| 783 | E4. Special Truss Moment Frames (STMF)               |
| 784 | 1. Scope   |
| 785 | 2. Basis of Design                                   |
| 786 | 3. Analysis  |
| 787 | 3a. Special Segment                                  |
| 788 | 3b. Nonspecial Segment                               |
| 789 | 4. System Requirements                               |
| 790 | 4a. Special Segment                                  |
| 791 | 4b. Stability Bracing of Trusses                     |
| 792 | 4c. Stability Bracing of Truss-to-Column Connections |
| 793 | 5. Members   |
| 794 | 5a. Special Segment Members                          |
| 795 | 5b. Expected Vertical Shear Strength of Special      |
| 796 | Segment  |
| 797 | 5c. Width-to-Thickness Limitations                   |
| 798 | 5d. Built-Up Chord Members                           |
| 799 | 5e. Protected Zones                                  |
| 800 | 6. Connections                                       |
| 801 | 6a. Demand Critical Welds                            |
| 802 | 6b. Connections of Diagonal Web Members in the       |
| 803 | Special Segment                                      |
| 804 | 6c. Column Splices                                   |

E5. Ordinary Cantilever Column Systems (OCCS)

1. Scope
2. Basis of Design
4. System Requirements
- 4a. Columns

E6. Special Cantilever Column Systems (SCCS)

1. Scope
2. Basis of Design
- 4a. Columns
- 4b. Stability Bracing of Columns
5. Members
- 5a. Basic Requirements
- 5b. Column Flanges
- 5c. Protected Zones
6. Connections
- 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 6b. Column Bases

**F. BRACED - FRAME AND SHEAR - WALL SYSTEMS**

F1. Ordinary Concentrically Braced Frames (OCBF)

1. Scope
2. Basis of Design
3. Analysis
4. System Requirements
- 4a. V-Braced and Inverted V-Braced Frames
- 4b. K-Braced Frames
- 4c. Multi-tiered Braced Frames
5. Members
- 5a. Basic Requirements
- 5b. Slenderness
6. Connections
- 6a. Brace Connections
7. Ordinary Concentrically Braced Frames above Seismic Isolation Systems

F2. Special Concentrically Braced Frames (SCBF)

1. Scope
2. Basis of Design
3. Analysis
4. System Requirements
- 4a. Lateral Force Distribution
- 4b. V- and Inverted V-Braced Frames
- 4c. K-Braced Frames
- 4d. Tension-Only Frames
- 4e. Multi-tiered Braced Frames
5. Members

- 851 5a. Basic Requirements
- 852 5b. Diagonal Braces
- 853 5c. Protected Zones
- 854 6. Connections
- 855 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 856 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 857 6c. Required Strength of Brace Connections
- 858 6d. Column Splices
- 859 F3. Eccentrically Braced Frames (EBF)
- 860 1. Scope
- 861 2. Basis of Design
- 862 3. Analysis
- 863 4. System Requirements
- 864 4a. Link Rotation Angle
- 865 4b. Bracing of Link
- 866 5. Members
- 867 5a. Basic Requirements
- 868 5b. Links
- 869 5c. Protected Zones
- 870 6. Connections
- 871 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 872 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 873 6c. Diagonal Brace Connections
- 874 6d. Column Splices
- 875 6e. Link-to-Column Connections
- 876 F4. Buckling-Restrained Braced Frames (BRBF)
- 877 1. Scope
- 878 2. Basis of Design
- 879 2a. Brace Strength
- 880 2b. Adjustment Factors
- 881 3. Analysis
- 882 4. System Requirements
- 883 4a. V- and Inverted V-Braced Frames
- 884 4b. K-Braced Frames
- 885 4d. Multi-tiered Braced Frames
- 886 5. Members
- 887 5a. Basic Requirements
- 888 5b. Diagonal Braces
- 889 5c. Protected Zones
- 890 6. Connections
- 891 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 892 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 893 6c. Diagonal Brace Connections
- 894 6d. Column Splices
- 895 F5. Special Plate Shear Walls (SPSW)
- 896 1. Scope

|     |           |   |
|-----|-----------|---|
| 897 | 2.        | Basis of Design                                 |
| 898 | 3.        | Analysis  |
| 899 | 4.        | System Requirements                             |
| 900 | 4a.       | Stiffness of Boundary Elements                  |
| 901 | 4c.       | Bracing   |
| 902 | 4d.       | Openings in Webs                                |
| 903 | 5.        | Members   |
| 904 | 5a.       | Basic Requirements                              |
| 905 | 5b.       | Webs  |
| 906 | 5c.       | Protected Zone                                  |
| 907 | 6.        | Connections                                     |
| 908 | 6a.       | Demand Critical Welds                           |
| 909 | 6b.       | HBE-to-VBE Connections                          |
| 910 | 6c.       | Connections of Webs to Boundary Elements        |
| 911 | 6d.       | Column Splices                                  |
| 912 | 7.        | Perforated Webs                                 |
| 913 | 7a.       | Regular Layout of Circular Perforations         |
| 914 | 7b.       | Reinforced Corner Cut-Out                       |
| 915 |           |   |
| 916 | <b>G.</b> | <b>COMPOSITE MOMENT - FRAME SYSTEMS</b>         |
| 917 | G1.       | Composite Ordinary Moment Frames (C-OMF)        |
| 918 | 2.        | Basis of Design                                 |
| 919 | G2.       | Composite Intermediate Moment Frames (C-IMF)    |
| 920 | 2.        | Basis of Design                                 |
| 921 | 4.        | System Requirements                             |
| 922 | 4a.       | Stability Bracing of Beams                      |
| 923 | 5.        | Members   |
| 924 | 5a.       | Basic Requirements                              |
| 925 | 5b.       | Beam Flanges                                    |
| 926 | 5c.       | Protected Zones                                 |
| 927 | 6.        | Connections                                     |
| 928 | 6a.       | Demand Critical Welds                           |
| 929 | 6b.       | Beam-to-Column Connections                      |
| 930 | 6c.       | Conformance Demonstration                       |
| 931 | 6d.       | Required Shear Strength                         |
| 932 | 6e.       | Connection Diaphragm Plates                     |
| 933 | 6f.       | Column Splices                                  |
| 934 | G3.       | Composite Special Moment Frames (C-SMF)         |
| 935 | 1.        | Scope   |
| 936 | 2.        | Basis of Design                                 |
| 937 | 4.        | System Requirements                             |
| 938 | 4a.       | Moment Ratio                                    |
| 939 | 4b.       | Stability Bracing of Beams                      |
| 940 | 4c.       | Stability Bracing at Beam-to-Column Connections |
| 941 | 5.        | Members   |
| 942 | 5a.       | Basic Requirements                              |

- 943 5b. Beam Flanges
- 944 5c. Protected Zones
- 945 6. Connections
- 946 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 947 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 948 6c. Conformance Demonstration
- 949 6d. Required Shear Strength
- 950 6e. Connection Diaphragm Plates
- 951 6f. Column Splices
- 952 G4. Composite Partially Restrained Moment Frames (C-PRMF)
- 953 1. Scope
- 954 2. Basis of Design
- 955 3. Analysis
- 956 4. System Requirements
- 957 5. Members
- 958 5a. Columns
- 959 5b. Beams
- 960 6. Connections
- 961 6c. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 962 6d. Conformance Demonstration
- 963
- 964

## **H. COMPOSITE BRACED FRAME AND SHEAR WALL SYSTEMS**

- 965 H1. Composite Ordinary Braced Frames (C-OBF)
- 966 1. Scope
- 967 6. Connections
- 968 H2. Composite Special Concentrically Braced Frames (C-SCBF)
- 969 1. Scope
- 970 2. Basis of Design
- 971 3. Analysis
- 972 4. System Requirements
- 973 5. Members
- 974 5b. Diagonal Braces
- 975 6. Connections
- 976 6a. Demand Critical Welds
- 977 6b. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 978 6d. Column Splices
- 979 H3. Composite Eccentrically Braced Frames (C-EBF)
- 980 1. Scope
- 981 2. Basis of Design
- 982 3. Analysis
- 983 6. Connections
- 984 6a. Beam-to-Column Connections
- 985 H4. Composite Ordinary Shear Walls (C-OSW)
- 986
- 987
- 988

|      |     |   |
|------|-----|---|
| 989  | 1.  | Scope   |
| 990  | 2.  | Basis of Design   |
| 991  | 3.  | Analysis  |
| 992  | 4.  | System Requirements                                       |
| 993  | 5.  | Members   |
| 994  | 5b. | Coupling Beams  |
| 995  | H5. | Composite Special Shear Walls (C-SSW)                     |
| 996  | 1.  | Scope   |
| 997  | 2.  | Basis of Design   |
| 998  | 3.  | Analysis  |
| 999  | 4.  | System Requirements                                       |
| 1000 | 5.  | Members   |
| 1001 | 5a. | Ductile Elements  |
| 1002 | 5b. | Boundary Members  |
| 1003 | 5c. | Steel Coupling Beams                                      |
| 1004 | 5d. | Composite Coupling Beams                                  |
| 1005 | 5e. | Protected Zones   |
| 1006 | 6.  | Connections   |
| 1007 | H6. | Composite Plate Shear Walls - Concrete Encased (C-PSW/CE) |
| 1008 |     |   |
| 1009 | 1.  | Scope   |
| 1010 | 3.  | Analysis  |
| 1011 | 3a. | Webs  |
| 1012 | 3b. | Other Members and Connections                             |
| 1013 | 4.  | System Requirements                                       |
| 1014 | 4e. | Openings in Webs  |
| 1015 | 5.  | Members   |
| 1016 | 5b. | Webs  |
| 1017 | 5c. | Concrete Stiffening Elements                              |
| 1018 | 5d. | Boundary Members  |
| 1019 | 6.  | Connections   |
| 1020 | 6a. | Demand Critical Welds                                     |
| 1021 | 6b. | HBE-to-VBE Connections                                    |
| 1022 | 6c. | Connections of Steel Plate to Boundary Elements           |
| 1023 | 6d. | Connections of Steel Plate to Reinforced Concrete         |
| 1024 |     | Panel   |
| 1025 | H7. | Composite Plate Shear Walls – Concrete Filled (C-PSW/CF)  |
| 1026 |     |   |
| 1027 | 1.  | Scope   |
| 1028 | 2.  | Basis of Design   |
| 1029 | 3.  | Analysis  |
| 1030 | 4.  | System Requirements                                       |
| 1031 | 4a. | Steel Web Plate of C-PSW/CF with Boundary                 |
| 1032 |     | Elements  |
| 1033 | 4b. | Steel Plate of C-PSW/CF without Boundary                  |
| 1034 |     | Elements  |

- 1035 4d. Spacing of Tie Bars in C-PSW/CF with or without
- 1036 Boundary Elements
- 1037 4f. Connection between Tie Bars and Steel Plates
- 1038 4h. C-PSW/CF and Foundation Connection
- 1039 5. Members
- 1040 5a. Flexural Strength
- 1041 5b. Shear Strength
- 1042

## **I. FABRICATION AND ERECTION**

- 1043 I1. Shop and Erection Drawings
- 1044 3. Shop and Erection Drawings for Composite
- 1045 Construction
- 1046 I2. Fabrication and Erection
- 1047 1. Protected Zone
- 1048 2. Bolted Joints
- 1049 3. Welded Joints
- 1050
- 1051

## **J. QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 1052 J1. Scope
- 1053 J2. Fabricator and Erector Documents
- 1054 1. Documents to be Submitted for Steel Construction
- 1055 2. Documents to be Available for Review for Steel
- 1056 Construction
- 1057 3. Documents to be Submitted for Composite
- 1058 Construction
- 1059 4. Documents to be Available for Review for
- 1060 Composite Construction
- 1061 J3. Quality Assurance Agency Documents
- 1062 J4. Inspection and Nondestructive Testing Personnel
- 1063 J5. Inspection Tasks
- 1064 1. Observe
- 1065 2. Perform
- 1066 3. Document
- 1067 J6. Welding Inspection and Nondestructive Testing
- 1068 1. Visual Welding Inspection
- 1069 2. Nondestructive Testing (NDT) of Welded Joints
- 1070 2a. k-Area NDT
- 1071 2b. CJP Groove Weld NDT
- 1072 2c. Column Splice and Column to Base Plate PJP
- 1073 Groove Weld NDT
- 1074 2d. Base Metal NDT for Lamellar Tearing and
- 1075 Laminations
- 1076 2e. Beam Cope and Access Hole NDT
- 1077 2f. Reduced Beam Section Repair NDT
- 1078 2g. Weld Tab Removal Sites
- 1079
- 1080

- J7. Inspection of High-Strength Bolting
- J8. Other Steel Structure Inspections
- J9. Inspection of Composite Structures
- J10. Inspection of H-Piles

## **K. PREQUALIFICATION AND CYCLIC QUALIFICATION TESTING PROVISIONS**

- K1. Prequalification of Beam-to-Column and Link-to-Column Connections
  - 1. Scope
  - 2. General Requirements
    - 2a. Basis for Prequalification
    - 2b. Authority for Prequalification
  - 3. Testing Requirements
  - 4. Prequalification Variables
  - 5. Design Procedure
  - 6. Prequalification Record
- K2. Cyclic Tests for Qualification of Beam-to-Column and Link-to-Column Connections
  - 1. Scope
  - 2. Test Subassembly Requirements
  - 3. Essential Test Variables
    - 3a. Sources of Inelastic Rotation
    - 3b. Members
    - 3f. Steel Strength for Steel Members and Connection Elements
    - 3i. Welded Joints
  - 4. Loading History
  - 6. Testing Requirements for Material Specimens
- K3. Cyclic Tests for Qualification of Buckling-Restrained Braces
  - 1. Scope
  - 2. Subassembly Test Specimen
  - 3. Brace Test Specimen
  - 5. Instrumentation
  - 6. Materials Testing Requirements
  - 7. Test Reporting Requirements
  - 8. Acceptance Criteria

## **REFERENCES**

## SYMBOLS

The symbols listed below are to be used in addition to or replacements for those in the AISC Specification for Structural Steel Buildings. Where there is a duplication of the use of a symbol between the Provisions and the AISC Specification for Structural Steel Buildings, the symbol listed herein takes precedence. The section or table number in the right-hand column refers to where the symbol is first used.

| <u>Symbol</u> | <u>Definition</u>   | <u>Reference</u> |
|---------------|---|------------------|
| $A_b$         | Cross-sectional area of a horizontal boundary element, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )  | F5.5b            |
| $A_c$         | Cross-sectional area of a vertical boundary element, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )  | F5.5b            |
| $A_{cw}$      | Area of concrete between web plates, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )  | H7.5b            |
| $A_f$         | Gross area of flange, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )   | E4.4b            |
| $A_g$         | Gross area, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )   | E3.4a            |
| $A_{lw}$      | Web area of link (excluding flanges), in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )   | F3.5b            |
| $A_s$         | Cross-sectional area of the structural steel core, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )  | D1.4b            |
| $A_{sc}$      | Cross-sectional area of the yielding segment of steel core, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )   | F4.5b            |
| $A_{sh}$      | Minimum area of tie reinforcement, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )  | D1.4b            |
| $A_{sp}$      | Horizontal area of stiffened steel plate in composite plate shear wall, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )   | H6.3b            |
| $A_{sr}$      | Area of transverse reinforcement in coupling beam, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )  | H4.5b            |
| $A_{sr}$      | Area of longitudinal wall reinforcement provided over the embedment length, $L_e$ , in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )   | H5.5c            |
| $A_{st}$      | Horizontal cross-sectional area of the link stiffener, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )  | F3.5b            |
| $A_{sw}$      | Area of steel web plates, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )   | H7.5b            |
| $A_{tb}$      | Area of transfer reinforcement required in each of the first and second regions attached to each of the top and bottom flanges, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> ) | H5.5c            |
| $A_w$         | Area of steel beam web, in. <sup>2</sup> (mm <sup>2</sup> )   | H4.5b            |
| $C_a$         | Ratio of required strength to available strength  | Table D1.1       |
| $C_d$         | Coefficient relating relative brace stiffness and curvature   | D1.2a            |
| $D$           | Dead load due to the weight of the structural elements and permanent features on the building, kips (N)   | D1.4b            |
| $D$           | Outside diameter of round HSS, in. (mm)   | Table D1.1       |

# SYMBOLS-ii

|    |           |   |
|----|-----------|---|
| 46 | D         | Diameter of the holes, in. (mm) ..... F5.7a   |
| 47 | E         | Seismic load effect, kips (N)..... F1.4a  |
| 48 | E         | Modulus of elasticity of steel = 29,000 ksi   |
| 49 |           | (200 000 MPa) ..... Table D1.1  |
| 50 | $E_{cl}$  | Capacity-limited horizontal seismic load effect ..... B2                                  |
| 51 | $E_{mh}$  | Horizontal seismic load effect, including the overstrength                                |
| 52 |           | factor, kips (N) or kip-in. (N-mm) ..... B2   |
| 53 | $F_{cr}$  | Critical stress, ksi (MPa) ..... F1.6a  |
| 54 | $F_{cre}$ | Critical stress calculated from Specification Chapter E using                             |
| 55 |           | expected yield stress, ksi (MPa)..... F1.6a   |
| 56 | $F_y$     | Specified minimum yield stress, ksi (MPa). As used in the                                 |
| 57 |           | Specification, "yield stress" denotes either the minimum                                  |
| 58 |           | specified yield point (for those steels that have a yield point) or                       |
| 59 |           | the specified yield strength (for those steels that do not have a                         |
| 60 |           | yield point). ..... A3.2  |
| 61 | $F_{yb}$  | Specified minimum yield stress of a beam, ksi (MPa) .... E3.4a                            |
| 62 | $F_{yc}$  | Specified minimum yield stress of a column, ksi (MPa) . E3.4a                             |
| 63 | $F_{ysc}$ | Specified minimum yield stress of the steel core, or actual yield                         |
| 64 |           | stress of the steel core as determined from a coupon test, ksi                            |
| 65 |           | (MPa) ..... F4.5b   |
| 66 | $F_{ysr}$ | Specified minimum yield stress of the ties, ksi (MPa) .... D1.4b                          |
| 67 | $F_{ysr}$ | Specified minimum yield stress of transverse reinforcement, ksi                           |
| 68 |           | (MPa) ..... H4.5b   |
| 69 | $F_{ysr}$ | Specified minimum yield stress of transfer reinforcement, ksi                             |
| 70 |           | (MPa) ..... H5.5c   |
| 71 | $F_{yw}$  | Specified minimum yield stress of web skin plates,  |
| 72 |           | ksi (MPa)..... H7.5b  |
| 73 | $F_u$     | Specified minimum tensile strength, ksi (MPa) ..... A3.2                                  |
| 74 | H         | Height of story, in. (mm) ..... D2.5c   |
| 75 | $H_c$     | Clear height of the column between beam connections,                                      |
| 76 |           | including a structural slab, if present, in. (mm) ..... F2.6d                             |
| 77 | I         | Moment of inertia, in. <sup>4</sup> (mm <sup>4</sup> ) ..... E4.5c                        |
| 78 | $I_b$     | Moment of inertia of a horizontal boundary element taken                                  |
| 79 |           | perpendicular to the direction of the web plate line, in. <sup>4</sup> (mm <sup>4</sup> ) |
| 80 |           | ..... F5.4a   |
| 81 | $I_c$     | Moment of inertia of a vertical boundary element taken                                    |
| 82 |           | perpendicular to the direction of the web plate line, in. <sup>4</sup> (mm <sup>4</sup> ) |
| 83 |           | ..... F5.4a   |
| 84 | $I_y$     | Moment of inertia about an axis in the plane of the EBF in. <sup>4</sup>                  |
| 85 |           | (mm <sup>4</sup> ) ..... F3.5b  |
| 86 | $I_y$     | Moment of inertia of the plate, in. <sup>4</sup> (mm <sup>4</sup> ) ..... F5.7b           |
| 87 | K         | Effective length factor..... F1.5b  |
| 88 | L         | Live load due to occupancy and moveable equipment, kips (N)                               |
| 89 |           | ..... D1.4b   |
| 90 | L         | Length of column, in. (mm) ..... E3.4c  |
| 91 | L         | Length of truss span, in. (mm) ..... E4.5c  |
| 92 | L         | Length of brace, in. (mm) ..... F1.5b   |

2016 Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

Draft Dated December 18, 2015

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION

# SYMBOLS-iii

|     |             |  |
|-----|-------------|--|
| 93  | L           | Distance between vertical boundary element centerlines, in. (mm)..... F5.4a  |
| 94  |             |  |
| 95  | $L_b$       | Length between points which are either braced against lateral displacement of compression flange or braced against twist of the cross section, in. (mm) ..... D1.2a  |
| 96  |             |  |
| 97  |             |  |
| 98  | $L_c$       | Effective length = $KL$ , in. (mm)..... F1.5b  |
| 99  | $L_{cf}$    | Clear length of beam, in. (mm)..... E1.6b  |
| 100 | $L_{cf}$    | Clear distance between column flanges, in. (mm)..... F5.5b   |
| 101 | $L_e$       | Embedment length of coupling beam, in. (mm) ..... H4.5b  |
| 102 | $L_h$       | Distance between plastic hinge locations, as defined within the test report or ANSI/AISC 358, in. (mm)..... E2.6d  |
| 103 |             |  |
| 104 | $L_s$       | Length of the special segment, in. (mm) ..... E4.5c  |
| 105 | $M_a$       | Required flexural strength, using ASD load combinations, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... D1.2c  |
| 106 |             |  |
| 107 | $M_{nc}$    | Nominal flexural strength of a chord member of the special segment, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... E4.5c   |
| 108 |             |  |
| 109 | $M_{n,PR}$  | Nominal flexural strength of PR connection at a rotation of 0.02 rad, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... E1.6c   |
| 110 |             |  |
| 111 | $M_p$       | Plastic flexural strength, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... E1.6b  |
| 112 | $M_p$       | Plastic flexural strength of a link, kip-in. (N-mm)..... F3.4a   |
| 113 | $M_p$       | Plastic flexural strength of the steel, concrete-encased or composite beam, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... G2.6b   |
| 114 |             |  |
| 115 | $M_p$       | Moment corresponding to plastic stress distribution over the composite cross section, kip-in. (N-mm)..... G4.6c  |
| 116 |             |  |
| 117 | $M_{pc}$    | Plastic flexural strength of the column, kip-in. (N-mm) . D2.5c  |
| 118 | $M_{pec}$   | Plastic flexural strength of a composite column, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... G2.6f  |
| 119 |             |  |
| 120 | $M_{p,exp}$ | Expected flexural strength, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... D1.2c   |
| 121 | $M_{pr}$    | Probable maximum moment at the location of the plastic hinge, as determined in accordance with ANSI/AISC 358, or as otherwise determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or in a program of qualification testing in accordance with Section K2, kip-in. (N-mm) .. E3.4a |
| 122 |             |  |
| 123 |             |  |
| 124 |             |  |
| 125 |             |  |
| 126 | $M_r$       | Required flexural strength, kip-in. (N-mm)..... D1.2a  |
| 127 | $M_u$       | Required flexural strength, using LRFD load combinations, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... D1.2c   |
| 128 |             |  |
| 129 | $M_v$       | Additional moment due to shear amplification from the location of the plastic hinge to the column centerline, kip-in. (N-mm) .. E3.4a  |
| 130 |             |  |
| 131 |             |  |
| 132 | $M_{uv}$    | <del>Moment</del> Additional moment due to shear amplification from the location of the plastic hinge to the column centerline, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... G3.4a   |
| 133 |             |  |
| 134 |             |  |
| 135 | $M^*_{pb}$  | Projection of the expected flexural strength of the beam as defined in Section E3.4a, kip-in. (N-mm)..... E3.4a  |
| 136 |             |  |
| 137 | $M^*_{pc}$  | Projection of the nominal flexural strength of the column as defined in Section E3.4a, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... E3.4a  |
| 138 |             |  |

ment [LCA1]: Editorial modification (after : 4) to make this symbol consistent with  $M_v$

# SYMBOLS-iv

|     |               |  |
|-----|---------------|--|
| 139 | $M^*_{pcc}$   | <del>Moment in the column above or below the joint at the intersection of the beam and column centerlines</del>                        |
| 140 |               | Projection of the nominal flexural strength of the composite or reinforced concrete column as defined in Section G3.4a, kip-in. (N-mm) |
| 141 |               | .....G3.4a   |
| 142 |               |  |
| 143 |               |  |
| 144 | $M^*_{p,exp}$ | <del>Moment in the steel beam or concrete encased composite beam at the intersection of the beam and column centerlines</del>          |
| 145 |               | Projection of the expected flexural strength of the steel or composite beam as defined in Section G3.4a, kip-in. (N-mm) ..... G3.4a    |
| 146 |               |  |
| 147 |               |  |
| 148 | $N_r$         | Number of horizontal rows of perforations ..... F5.7a  |
| 149 | $P_a$         | Required axial strength using ASD load combinations, kips (N) Table D1.1   |
| 150 |               |  |
| 151 | $P_{ac}$      | Required compressive strength using ASD load combinations, kips (N) ..... E3.4a  |
| 152 |               |  |
| 153 | $P_b$         | Axial design strength of wall at balanced condition, kips (N) ..... H5.4   |
| 154 |               |  |
| 155 | $P_c$         | Available axial strength, kips (N) ..... E3.4a   |
| 156 | $P_n$         | Nominal axial compressive strength, kips (N) ..... D1.4b   |
| 157 | $P_{nc}$      | Nominal axial compressive strength of diagonal members of the special segment, kips (N) ..... E4.5c                                    |
| 158 |               |  |
| 159 | $P_{nt}$      | Nominal axial tensile strength of diagonal members of the special segment, kips (N) ..... E4.5c  |
| 160 |               |  |
| 161 | $P_r$         | Required axial compressive strength, kips (N) ..... E4.4d  |
| 162 | $P_{rc}$      | Required axial strength, kips (N)..... E5.4a   |
| 163 | $P_u$         | Required axial strength using LRFD load combinations, kips (N) Table D1.1  |
| 164 |               |  |
| 165 | $P_{uc}$      | Required compressive strength using LRFD load combinations, kips (N) ..... E3.4a   |
| 166 |               |  |
| 167 | $P_y$         | Axial yield strength, kips (N) ..... Table D1.1  |
| 168 | $P_{ysc}$     | Axial yield strength of steel core, kips (N) ..... F4.2a   |
| 169 | $P_{ysc-max}$ | Maximum specified axial yield strength of steel core, ksi (MPa) ..... F4.4d  |
| 170 |               |  |
| 171 | $P_{ysc-min}$ | Minimum specified axial yield strength of steel core, ksi (MPa) ..... F4.4d  |
| 172 |               |  |
| 173 | $R$           | Seismic response modification coefficient ..... A1   |
| 174 | $R$           | Radius of the cut-out, in. (mm) ..... F5.7b  |
| 175 | $R_c$         | Factor to account for expected strength of concrete = 1.5.. H5.5d  |
| 176 | $R_n$         | Nominal strength, kips (N) ..... A3.2  |
| 177 | $R_t$         | Ratio of the expected tensile strength to the specified minimum tensile strength $F_u$ ..... A3.2                                      |
| 178 |               |  |
| 179 | $R_y$         | Ratio of the expected yield stress to the specified minimum yield stress, $F_y$ ..... A3.2   |
| 180 |               |  |
| 181 | $R_{yr}$      | Ratio of the expected yield stress of the transverse reinforcement material to the specified minimum yield stress..... H5.5d           |
| 182 |               |  |
| 183 |               |  |
| 184 | $S_{diag}$    | Shortest center-to-center distance between holes, in. (mm) ..... F5.7a   |
| 185 |               |  |

ment [LCA2]: Editorial. Revised to make this symbol consistent with  $M^*_{pc}$

ment [LCA3]: Editorial. Revised to make symbol consistent with  $M^*_{pb}$

# SYMBOLS-v

|     |              |  |
|-----|--------------|--|
| 186 | $V_a$        | Required shear strength using ASD load combinations, kips (N)                          |
| 187 |              | .....E1.6b   |
| 188 | $V_{comp}$   | Limiting expected shear strength of an encased composite                               |
| 189 |              | coupling beam, kips (N) ..... H4.5b  |
| 190 | $V_n$        | Nominal shear strength of link, kips (N) ..... F3.3                                    |
| 191 | $V_n$        | Expected shear strength of a steel coupling beam, kips (N) .....                       |
| 192 |              | ..... H4.5b  |
| 193 | $V_{n,comp}$ | Expected shear strength of an encased composite coupling beam,                         |
| 194 |              | kips (N) ..... H4.5b   |
| 195 | $V_{ne}$     | Expected vertical shear strength of the special segment, kips (N)                      |
| 196 |              | .....E4.5c   |
| 197 | $V_p$        | Plastic shear strength of a link, kips (N) ..... F3.4a                                 |
| 198 | $V_r$        | Required shear strength using LRFD or ASD load combinations,                           |
| 199 |              | kips (N) ..... F3.5b   |
| 200 | $V_u$        | Required shear strength using LRFD load combinations, kips (N)                         |
| 201 |              | .....E1.6b   |
| 202 | $V_y$        | Nominal shear yield strength, kips (N) ..... F3.5b                                     |
| 203 | $Y_{con}$    | Distance from the top of the steel beam to the top of concrete                         |
| 204 |              | slab or encasement, in. (mm) ..... G3.5a   |
| 205 | $Y_{PNA}$    | Maximum distance from the maximum concrete compression                                 |
| 206 |              | fiber to the plastic neutral axis, in. (mm)..... G3.5a                                 |
| 207 | $Z$          | Plastic section modulus about the axis of bending, in. <sup>3</sup> (mm <sup>3</sup> ) |
| 208 |              | D1.2a  |
| 209 | $Z_c$        | Plastic section modulus of the column about the axis of bending,                       |
| 210 |              | in. <sup>3</sup> (mm <sup>3</sup> ) ..... E3.4a  |
| 211 | $Z_x$        | Plastic section modulus about x-axis, in. <sup>3</sup> (mm <sup>3</sup> )..... E2.6g   |
| 212 | $a$          | Distance between connectors, in. (mm)..... F2.5b                                       |
| 213 | $b$          | Width of compression element as defined in Specification                               |
| 214 |              | Section B4.1, in. (mm) ..... Table D1.1  |
| 215 | $b$          | Inside width of a box section, in. (mm) ..... F3.5b                                    |
| 216 | $b_{bf}$     | Width of beam flange, in. (mm) ..... E3.6f   |
| 217 | $b_f$        | Width of flange, in. (mm) ..... D2.5b  |
| 218 | $b_w$        | Thickness of wall pier, in. (mm) ..... H4.5b   |
| 219 | $b_w$        | Width of wall, in. (mm) ..... H5.5c  |
| 220 | $b_{wc}$     | Width of concrete encasement, in. (mm) ..... H4.5b                                     |
| 221 | $d$          | Overall depth of beam, in. (mm) ..... Table D1.1                                       |
| 222 | $d$          | Nominal bolt diameter, in. (mm) ..... D2.2   |
| 223 | $d$          | Overall depth of link, in. (mm) ..... F3.5b  |
| 224 | $d_c$        | Effective depth of concrete encasement, in. (mm) ..... H4.5b                           |
| 225 | $d_z$        | $d-2t_f$ of the deeper beam at the connection, in. (mm)..... E3.6e                     |
| 226 | $d^*$        | Distance between centroids of beam flanges or beam flange                              |
| 227 |              | connections to the face of the column, in. (mm) ..... E3.6f                            |
| 228 | $e$          | Length of EBF link, in. (mm) ..... F3.5b   |
| 229 | $f'_c$       | Specified compressive strength of concrete, ksi (MPa) ..D1.4b                          |
| 230 | $g$          | Clear span of coupling beam, in. (mm) ..... H4.5b                                      |
| 231 | $h$          | Clear distance between flanges less the fillet or corner radius for                    |

# SYMBOLS-vi

|     |               |  |
|-----|---------------|--|
| 232 |               | rolled shapes; and for built-up sections, the distance between               |
| 233 |               | adjacent lines of fasteners or the clear distance between flanges            |
| 234 |               | when welds are used; for tees, the overall depth; and for                    |
| 235 |               | rectangular HSS, the clear distance between the flanges less the             |
| 236 |               | inside corner radius on each side, in. (mm) ..... Table D1.1                 |
| 237 | $h$           | Distance between horizontal boundary element centerlines, in.                |
| 238 |               | (mm) ..... F5.4a   |
| 239 | $h$           | Overall depth of the boundary member in the plane of the wall,               |
| 240 |               | in. (mm) ..... H5.5b   |
| 241 | $h_{cc}$      | Cross-sectional dimension of the confined core region in                     |
| 242 |               | composite columns measured center-to-center of the transverse                |
| 243 |               | reinforcement, in. (mm) ..... D1.4b  |
| 244 | $h_o$         | Distance between flange centroids, in. (mm) ..... D1.2c                      |
| 245 | $r$           | Governing radius of gyration, in. (mm) ..... E3.4c                           |
| 246 | $r_i$         | Minimum radius of gyration of individual component, in. (mm)                 |
| 247 |               | ..... F2.5b  |
| 248 | $r_y$         | Radius of gyration about y-axis, in. (mm) ..... D1.2a                        |
| 249 | $r_y$         | Radius of gyration of individual components about their weak                 |
| 250 |               | axis, in. (mm) ..... E4.5e   |
| 251 | $s$           | Spacing of transverse reinforcement, in. (mm) ..... D1.4b                    |
| 252 | $t$           | Thickness of element, in. (mm) ..... Table D1.1                              |
| 253 | $t$           | Thickness of column web or doubler plate, in. (mm) ..... E3.6e               |
| 254 | $t_{bf}$      | Thickness of beam flange, in. (mm) ..... E3.4c                               |
| 255 | $t_{eff}$     | Effective web-plate thickness, in. (mm) ..... F5.7a                          |
| 256 | $t_f$         | Thickness of flange, in. (mm) ..... D2.5b                                    |
| 257 | $t_{lim}$     | Limiting column flange thickness, in. (mm) ..... E3.6f                       |
| 258 | $t_s$         | Thickness of steel web plate, in. (mm) ..... H7.4e                           |
| 259 | $t_w$         | Thickness of web, in. (mm) ..... F3.5b                                       |
| 260 | $t_w$         | Web-plate thickness, in. (mm) ..... F5.7a                                    |
| 261 | $t_w$         | Thickness of wall, in. (mm) ..... H7.4e                                      |
| 262 | $w_{min}$     | Minimum of $w_1$ and $w_2$ , in. (mm) ..... H7.4e                            |
| 263 | $w_1$         | Maximum spacing of tie bars in vertical and horizontal                       |
| 264 |               | directions, in. (mm) ..... H7.4a   |
| 265 | $w_1$         | Maximum spacing of tie bars or shear studs in vertical and                   |
| 266 |               | horizontal directions, in. (mm) ..... H7.4b                                  |
| 267 | $w_1, w_2$    | Vertical and horizontal spacing of tie bars, respectively,                   |
| 268 |               | in. (mm) ..... H7.4e   |
| 269 | $w_z$         | Width of panel zone between column flanges, in. (mm) ..... E3.6e             |
| 270 | $\Delta$      | Design story drift, in. (mm) ..... F3.4a                                     |
| 271 | $\Delta_b$    | Deformation quantity used to control loading of test specimen                |
| 272 |               | (total brace end rotation for the subassembly test specimen;                 |
| 273 |               | total brace axial deformation for the brace test specimen), in.              |
| 274 |               | (mm) ..... K3.4c   |
| 275 | $\Delta_{bm}$ | Value of deformation quantity, $\Delta_b$ , corresponding to the design      |
| 276 |               | story drift, in. (mm) ..... K3.4c  |
| 277 | $\Delta_{by}$ | Value of deformation quantity, $\Delta_b$ , at first yield of test specimen, |

# SYMBOLS-vii

|     |                              |   |            |
|-----|------------------------------|---|------------|
| 278 |                              | in. (mm) .....  | K3.4c      |
| 279 | $\Omega$                     | Safety factor .....   | B3.2       |
| 280 | $\Omega_c$                   | Safety factor for compression .....   | Table D1.1 |
| 281 | $\Omega_o$                   | System overstrength factor .....  | B2         |
| 282 | $\Omega_v$                   | Safety factor for shear strength of panel zone of beam-to-column connections .....  | E3.6e      |
| 283 |                              |   |            |
| 284 | $\alpha_s$                   | LRFD-ASD force level adjustment factor = 1.0 for LRFD and 1.5 for ASD .....   | D1.2a      |
| 285 |                              |   |            |
| 286 | $\alpha$                     | Angle of diagonal members with the horizontal, degrees .....  | E4.5c      |
| 287 | $\alpha$                     | Angle of web yielding, as measured relative to the vertical, degrees .....  | F5.5b      |
| 288 |                              |   |            |
| 289 | $\alpha$                     | Angle of the shortest center-to-center lines in the opening array to vertical, degrees .....                                | F5.7a      |
| 290 |                              |   |            |
| 291 | $\beta$                      | Compression strength adjustment factor .....  | F4.2a      |
| 292 | $\beta_1$                    | Factor relating depth of equivalent rectangular compressive stress block to neutral axis depth, as defined in ACI 318 H4.5b |            |
| 293 |                              |   |            |
| 294 | $\gamma_{total}$             | Total link rotation angle .....   | K2.4c      |
| 295 | $\theta$                     | Story drift angle, rad .....  | K2.4b      |
| 296 | $\lambda_{hd}, \lambda_{md}$ | Limiting slenderness parameter for highly and moderately ductile compression elements, respectively .....                   | D1.1b      |
| 297 |                              |   |            |
| 298 | $\phi$                       | Resistance factor .....   | B3.2       |
| 299 | $\phi_c$                     | Resistance factor for compression .....   | Table D1.1 |
| 300 | $\phi_v$                     | Resistance factor for shear .....   | E3.6e      |
| 301 | $\bar{\rho}$                 | Strength adjusted reinforcement ratio .....   | H7.5b      |
| 302 | $\omega$                     | Strain hardening adjustment factor .....  | F4.2a      |

## Glossary

The terms listed below are to be used in addition to those in the AISC Specification for Structural Steel Buildings. Some commonly used terms are repeated here for convenience.

Notes:

- (1) Terms designated with † are common AISI-AISC terms that are coordinated between the two standards developers.
- (2) Terms designated with \* are usually qualified by the type of load effect, for example, nominal tensile strength, available compressive strength, and design flexural strength.

**Adjusted brace strength.** Strength of a brace in a buckling-restrained braced frame at deformations corresponding to 2.0 times the design story drift.

**Adjusted link shear strength.** Link shear strength including the material overstrength and strain hardening.

**Allowable strength\*†.** Nominal strength divided by the safety factor,  $R_n / \Omega$ .

**Applicable building code†.** Building code under which the structure is designed.

**ASD (allowable strength design)†.** Method of proportioning structural components such that the allowable strength equals or exceeds the required strength of the component under the action of the ASD load combinations.

**ASD load combination†.** Load combination in the applicable building code intended for allowable strength design (allowable stress design).

**Authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).** Organization, political subdivision, office or individual charged with the responsibility of administering and enforcing the provisions of this Standard.

**Available strength\*†.** Design strength or allowable strength, as applicable.

**Boundary member.** Portion along wall or diaphragm edge strengthened with structural steel sections and/or longitudinal steel reinforcement and transverse reinforcement.

**Brace test specimen.** A single buckling-restrained brace element used for laboratory testing intended to model the brace in the prototype.

**Braced frame†.** An essentially vertical truss system that provides resistance to lateral forces and provides stability for the structural system.

**Buckling-restrained brace.** A pre-fabricated, or manufactured, brace element consisting of a steel core and a buckling-restraining system as described in Section F4 and qualified by testing as required in Section K3.

**Buckling-restrained braced frame (BRBF).** A diagonally braced frame employing buckling-restrained braces and meeting the requirements of Section F4.

**Buckling-restraining system.** System of restraints that limits buckling of the steel core in BRBF. This system includes the casing surrounding the steel core and structural elements adjoining its connections. The

- buckling-restraining system is intended to permit the transverse expansion and longitudinal contraction of the steel core for deformations corresponding to 2.0 times the design story drift.
- Casing. Element that resists forces transverse to the axis of the diagonal brace thereby restraining buckling of the core. The casing requires a means of delivering this force to the remainder of the buckling-restraining system. The casing resists little or no force along the axis of the diagonal brace.
- Capacity-limited seismic load. The capacity-limited horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , determined in accordance with these Provisions, substituted for  $E_{mh}$ , and applied as prescribed by the load combinations in the applicable building code.
- Collector. Also known as drag strut; member that serves to transfer loads between diaphragms and the members of the vertical force-resisting elements of the seismic force-resisting system.
- Column base. Assemblage of structural shapes, plates, connectors, bolts and rods at the base of a column used to transmit forces between the steel superstructure and the foundation.
- Complete loading cycle. A cycle of rotation taken from zero force to zero force, including one positive and one negative peak.
- Composite beam. Structural steel beam in contact with and acting compositely with a reinforced concrete slab designed to act compositely for seismic forces.
- Composite brace. Concrete-encased structural steel section (rolled or built-up) or concrete-filled steel section used as a diagonal brace.
- Composite column. Concrete-encased structural steel section (rolled or built-up) or concrete-filled steel section used as a column.
- Composite eccentrically braced frame (C-EBF). Composite braced frame meeting the requirements of Section H3.
- Composite intermediate moment frame (C-IMF). Composite moment frame meeting the requirements of Section G2.
- Composite ordinary braced frame (C-OBF). Composite braced frame meeting the requirements of Section H1.
- Composite ordinary moment frame (C-OMF). Composite moment frame meeting the requirements of Section G1.
- Composite ordinary shear wall (C-OSW). Composite shear wall meeting the requirements of Section H4.
- Composite partially restrained moment frame (C-PRMF). Composite moment frame meeting the requirements of Section G4.
- Composite plate shear wall (C-PSW). Wall consisting of steel plate with reinforced concrete encasement on one or both sides that provides out-of-plane stiffening to prevent buckling of the steel plate and meeting the requirements of Section H6.
- Composite shear wall. Steel plate wall panel composite with reinforced concrete wall panel or reinforced concrete wall that has steel or concrete-encased structural steel sections as boundary members.

- 442 Composite slab. Reinforced concrete slab supported on and bonded to a  
 443 formed steel deck that acts as a diaphragm to transfer load to and  
 444 between elements of the seismic force resisting system.
- 445 Composite special concentrically braced frame (C-SCBF). Composite braced  
 446 frame meeting the requirements of Section H2.
- 447 Composite special moment frame (C-SMF). Composite moment frame  
 448 meeting the requirements of Section G3.
- 449 Composite special shear wall (C-SSW). Composite shear wall meeting the  
 450 requirements of Section H5.
- 451 Concrete-encased shapes. Structural steel sections encased in concrete.
- 452 Continuity plates. Column stiffeners at the top and bottom of the panel zone;  
 453 also known as transverse stiffeners.
- 454 Coupling beam. Structural steel or composite beam connecting adjacent  
 455 reinforced concrete wall elements so that they act together to resist  
 456 lateral loads.
- 457 Demand critical weld. Weld so designated by these Provisions.
- 458 Design earthquake ground motion. The ground motion represented by the  
 459 design response spectrum as specified in the applicable building code.
- 460 Design story drift. Calculated story drift, including the effect of expected  
 461 inelastic action, due to design level earthquake forces as determined by  
 462 the applicable building code.
- 463 Design strength\*†. Resistance factor multiplied by the nominal strength,  $\phi R_n$ .
- 464 Diagonal brace. Inclined structural member carrying primarily axial force in a  
 465 braced frame.
- 466 Ductile limit state. Ductile limit states include member and connection  
 467 yielding, bearing deformation at bolt holes, as well as buckling of  
 468 members that conform to the seismic compactness limitations of Table  
 469 D1.1. Rupture of a member or of a connection, or buckling of a  
 470 connection element, is not a ductile limit state.
- 471 Eccentrically braced frame (EBF). Diagonally braced frame meeting the  
 472 requirements of Section F3 that has at least one end of each diagonal  
 473 brace connected to a beam with a defined eccentricity from another  
 474 beam-to-brace connection or a beam-to-column connection.
- 475 Encased composite beam. Composite beam completely enclosed in reinforced  
 476 concrete.
- 477 Encased composite column. Structural steel column completely encased in  
 478 reinforced concrete.
- 479 Engineer of record. Licensed professional responsible for sealing the contract  
 480 documents.
- 481 Exempted column. Column not meeting the requirements of Equation E3-1 for  
 482 SMF.
- 483 Expected tensile strength\*. Tensile strength of a member, equal to the  
 484 specified minimum tensile strength,  $F_u$ , multiplied by  $R_t$ .
- 485 Expected yield strength. Yield strength in tension of a member, equal to the  
 486 expected yield stress multiplied by  $A_g$ .

- 487 Expected yield stress. Yield stress of the material, equal to the specified  
 488 minimum yield stress,  $F_y$ , multiplied by  $R_y$ .
- 489 Face bearing plates. Stiffeners attached to structural steel beams that are  
 490 embedded in reinforced concrete walls or columns. The plates are  
 491 located at the face of the reinforced concrete to provide confinement  
 492 and to transfer loads to the concrete through direct bearing.
- 493 Filled composite column. HSS filled with structural concrete.
- 494 Fully composite beam. Composite beam that has a sufficient number of steel  
 495 headed stud anchors to develop the nominal plastic flexural strength of  
 496 the composite section.
- 497 Highly ductile member. A member that meets the requirements for highly  
 498 ductile members in Section D1.
- 499 Horizontal boundary element (HBE). A beam with a connection to one or  
 500 more web plates in an SPSW.
- 501 Intermediate boundary element (IBE). A member, other than a beam or  
 502 column, that provides resistance to web plate tension adjacent to an  
 503 opening in an SPSW.
- 504 Intermediate moment frame (IMF). Moment frame system that meets the re-  
 505 quirements of Section E2.
- 506 Inverted-V-braced frame. See V-braced frame.
- 507 k-area. The region of the web that extends from the tangent point of the web  
 508 and the flange-web fillet (AISC “k” dimension) a distance of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. (38  
 509 mm) into the web beyond the k dimension.
- 510 K-braced frame. A braced-frame configuration in which two or more braces  
 511 connect to a column at a point other than a beam-to-column or strut-to-  
 512 column connection.
- 513 Link. In EBF, the segment of a beam that is located between the ends of the  
 514 connections of two diagonal braces or between the end of a diagonal  
 515 brace and a column. The length of the link is defined as the clear dist-  
 516 ance between the ends of two diagonal braces or between the diagonal  
 517 brace and the column face.
- 518 Link intermediate web stiffeners. Vertical web stiffeners placed within the link  
 519 in EBF.
- 520 Link rotation angle. Inelastic angle between the link and the beam outside of  
 521 the link when the total story drift is equal to the design story drift.
- 522 Link rotation angle, total. The relative displacement of one end of the link  
 523 with respect to the other end (measured transverse to the longitudinal  
 524 axis of the undeformed link), divided by the link length. The total link  
 525 rotation angle includes both elastic and inelastic components of  
 526 deformation of the link and the members attached to the link ends.
- 527 Link design shear strength. Lesser of the available shear strength of the link  
 528 based on the flexural or shear strength of the link member.
- 529 Load-carrying reinforcement. Reinforcement in composite members designed  
 530 and detailed to resist the required loads.
- 531 Lowest anticipated service temperature (LAST). Lowest daily minimum  
 532 temperature, or other suitable temperature, as established by the  
 533 engineer of record.

- 534 LRFD (load and resistance factor design)†. Method of proportioning  
 535 structural components such that the design strength equals or exceeds  
 536 the required strength of the component under the action of the LRFD  
 537 load combinations.
- 538 LRFD load combination†. Load combination in the applicable building code  
 539 intended for strength design (load and resistance factor design).
- 540 Material test plate. A test specimen from which steel samples or weld metal  
 541 samples are machined for subsequent testing to determine mechanical  
 542 properties.
- 543 Member brace. Member that provides stiffness and strength to control  
 544 movement of another member out-of-the plane of the frame at the  
 545 braced points.
- 546 Moderately ductile member. A member that meets the requirements for  
 547 moderately ductile members in Section D1.
- 548 Multi-tiered braced frame (MTBF). A braced-frame configuration with two or  
 549 more tiers of bracing between diaphragm levels or locations of out-of-  
 550 plane bracing.
- 551 Nominal strength\*†. Strength of a structure or component (without the  
 552 resistance factor or safety factor applied) to resist load effects, as  
 553 determined in accordance with the Specification.
- 554 Ordinary cantilever column system (OCCS). A seismic force resisting-system  
 555 in which the seismic forces are resisted by one or more columns that are  
 556 cantilevered from the foundation or from the diaphragm level below  
 557 and that meets the requirements of Section E5.
- 558 Ordinary concentrically braced frame (OCBF). Diagonally braced frame  
 559 meeting the requirements of Section F1 in which all members of the  
 560 braced-frame system are subjected primarily to axial forces.
- 561 Ordinary moment frame (OMF). Moment frame system that meets the re-  
 562 quirements of Section E1.
- 563 Overstrength factor,  $\Omega_o$ . Factor specified by the applicable building code in  
 564 order to determine the overstrength seismic load, where required by  
 565 these Provisions.
- 566 Overstrength seismic load. The horizontal seismic load effect including  
 567 overstrength determined using the overstrength factor,  $\Omega_o$ , and applied  
 568 as prescribed by the load combinations in the applicable building code.
- 569 Partially composite beam. Steel beam with a composite slab with a nominal  
 570 flexural strength controlled by the strength of the steel headed stud  
 571 anchors.
- 572 Partially-restrained composite connection. Partially restrained (PR)  
 573 connections as defined in the Specification that connect partially or  
 574 fully composite beams to steel columns with flexural resistance  
 575 provided by a force couple achieved with steel reinforcement in the slab  
 576 and a steel seat angle or comparable connection at the bottom flange.
- 577 Plastic hinge. Yielded zone that forms in a structural member when the  
 578 plastic moment is attained. The member is assumed to rotate further as  
 579 if hinged, except that such rotation is restrained by the plastic moment.

- 580 Power-actuated fastener. Nail-like fastener driven by explosive powder, gas  
 581 combustion, or compressed air or other gas to embed the fastener into  
 582 structural steel.
- 583 Prequalified connection. Connection that complies with the requirements of  
 584 Section K1 or ANSI/AISC 358.
- 585 Protected zone. Area of members or connections of members in which  
 586 limitations apply to fabrication and attachments.
- 587 Prototype. The connection or diagonal brace that is to be used in the building  
 588 (SMF, IMF, EBF, BRBF, C-IMF, C-SMF and C-PRMF).
- 589 Provisions. Refers to this document, the AISC Seismic Provisions for  
 590 Structural Steel Buildings (ANSI/AISC 341).
- 591 Quality assurance plan. Written description of qualifications, procedures,  
 592 quality inspections, resources and records to be used to provide  
 593 assurance that the structure complies with the engineer's quality  
 594 requirements, specifications and contract documents.
- 595 Reduced beam section. Reduction in cross section over a discrete length that  
 596 promotes a zone of inelasticity in the member.
- 597 Required strength\*. Forces, stresses and deformations acting on a structural  
 598 component, determined by either structural analysis, for the LRFD or  
 599 ASD load combinations, as appropriate, or as specified by the  
 600 Specification and these Provisions.
- 601 Resistance factor,  $\phi$ †. Factor that accounts for unavoidable deviations of the  
 602 nominal strength from the actual strength and for the manner and  
 603 consequences of failure.
- 604 Risk category. Classification assigned to a structure based on its use as  
 605 specified by the applicable building code.
- 606 Safety factor,  $\Omega$ †. Factor that accounts for deviations of the actual strength  
 607 from the nominal strength, deviations of the actual load from the  
 608 nominal load, uncertainties in the analysis that transforms the load into  
 609 a load effect, and for the manner and consequences of failure.
- 610 Seismic design category. A classification assigned to a structure based on its  
 611 risk category and the severity of the design earthquake ground motion  
 612 at the site.
- 613 Seismic force-resisting system (SFRS). That part of the structural system that  
 614 has been considered in the design to provide the required resistance to  
 615 the seismic forces prescribed in the applicable building code.
- 616 Seismic response modification coefficient, R. Factor that reduces seismic load  
 617 effects to strength level as specified by the applicable building code.
- 618 Special cantilever column system (SCCS). A seismic force resisting-system in  
 619 which the seismic forces are resisted by one or more columns that are  
 620 cantilevered from the foundation or from the diaphragm level below  
 621 and that meets the requirements of Section E6.
- 622 Special concentrically braced frame (SCBF). Diagonally braced frame  
 623 meeting the requirements of Section F2 in which all members of the  
 624 braced-frame system are subjected primarily to axial forces.

- 625 Special moment frame (SMF). Moment frame system that meets the  
 626 requirements of Section E3.
- 627 Special plate shear wall (SPSW). Plate shear wall system that meets the  
 628 requirements of Section F5.
- 629 Special truss moment frame (STMF). Truss moment frame system that meets  
 630 the requirements of Section E4.
- 631 Specification. Refers to the AISC Specification for Structural Steel Buildings  
 632 (ANSI/AISC 360).
- 633 Steel core. Axial-force-resisting element of a buckling-restrained brace. The  
 634 steel core contains a yielding segment and connections to transfer its  
 635 axial force to adjoining elements; it is permitted to also contain  
 636 projections beyond the casing and transition segments between the  
 637 projections and yielding segment.
- 638 Story drift angle. Interstory displacement divided by story height.
- 639 Strut. A horizontal member in a multi-tiered braced frame interconnecting  
 640 brace connection points at columns.
- 641 Subassemblage test specimen. The combination of members, connections and  
 642 testing apparatus that replicate as closely as practical the boundary  
 643 conditions, loading and deformations in the prototype.
- 644 Test setup. The supporting fixtures, loading equipment and lateral bracing  
 645 used to support and load the test specimen.
- 646 Test specimen. A member, connection or subassemblage test specimen.
- 647 Test subassemblage. The combination of the test specimen and pertinent  
 648 portions of the test setup.
- 649 V-braced frame. Concentrically braced frame (SCBF, OCBF, BRBF, C-OBF  
 650 or C-SCBF) in which a pair of diagonal braces located either above or  
 651 below a beam is connected to a single point within the clear beam span.  
 652 Where the diagonal braces are below the beam, the system is also  
 653 referred to as an inverted-V-braced frame.
- 654 Vertical boundary element (VBE). A column with a connection to one or more  
 655 web plates in an SPSW.
- 656 X-braced frame. Concentrically braced frame (OCBF, SCBF, C-OBF or C-  
 657 SCBF) in which a pair of diagonal braces crosses near the mid-length  
 658 of the diagonal braces.
- 659 Yield length ratio. In a buckling-restrained brace, the ratio of the length over  
 660 which the core area is equal to  $A_{sc}$ , to the length from intersection  
 661 points of brace centerline and beam or column centerline at each end.

## ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations appear in the AISC Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings. The abbreviations are written out where they first appear within a Section.

ACI (American Concrete Institute)  
 AISC (American Institute of Steel Construction)  
 ANSI (American National Standards Institute)  
 ASCE (American Society of Civil Engineers)  
 ASD (allowable strength design)  
 AWS (American Welding Society)  
 BRBF (buckling-restrained braced frame)  
 C-EBF (composite eccentrically braced frame)  
 C-IMF (composite intermediate moment frame)  
 CJP (complete joint penetration)  
 C-OBF (composite ordinary braced frame)  
 C-OMF (composite ordinary moment frame)  
 C-OSW (composite ordinary shear wall)  
 C-PRMF (composite partially restrained moment frame)  
 CPRP (connection prequalification review panel)  
 C-PSW (composite plate shear wall)  
 C-SCBF (composite special concentrically braced frame)  
 C-SMF (composite special moment frame)  
 C-SSW (composite special shear wall)  
 CVN (Charpy V-notch)  
 EBF (eccentrically braced frame)  
 FCAW (flux cored arc welding)  
 FEMA (Federal Emergency Management Agency)  
 FR (fully restrained)  
 GMAW (gas metal arc welding)  
 HBE (horizontal boundary element)  
 HSS (hollow structural section)  
 IBE (intermediate boundary element)  
 IMF (intermediate moment frame)  
 LAST (lowest anticipated service temperature)  
 LRFD (load and resistance factor design)  
 MT (magnetic particle testing)  
 MT-OCBF (multi-tiered ordinary concentrically braced frame)  
 MT-SCBF (multi-tiered special concentrically braced frame)  
 MT-BRBF (multi-tiered buckling-restrained braced frame)  
 NDT (nondestructive testing)  
 OCBF (ordinary concentrically braced frame)  
 OCCS (ordinary cantilever column system)  
 OMF (ordinary moment frame)

## ABBREVIATIONS-2

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| 746 | OVS (oversized)                                   |
| 747 | PJP (partial joint penetration)                   |
| 748 | PR (partially restrained)                         |
| 749 | QA (quality assurance)                            |
| 750 | QC (quality control)                              |
| 751 | RBS (reduced beam section)                        |
| 752 | RCSC (Research Council on Structural Connections) |
| 753 | SCBF (special concentrically braced frame)        |
| 754 | SCCS (special cantilever column system)           |
| 755 | SDC (seismic design category)                     |
| 756 | SEI (Structural Engineering Institute)            |
| 757 | SFRS (seismic force-resisting system)             |
| 758 | SMAW (shielded metal arc welding)                 |
| 759 | SMF (special moment frame)                        |
| 760 | SPSPW (special perforated steel plate wall)       |
| 761 | SPSW (special plate shear wall)                   |
| 762 | SRC (steel-reinforced concrete)                   |
| 763 | STMF (special truss moment frame)                 |
| 764 | UT (ultrasonic testing)                           |
| 765 | VBE (vertical boundary element)                   |
| 766 | WPQR (welder performance qualification records)   |
| 767 | WPS (welding procedure specification)             |

## CHAPTER A

### GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

This chapter states the scope of the Provisions, summarizes referenced specification, code and standard documents, and provides requirements for materials and contract documents.

The chapter is organized as follows:

- A1. Scope
- A2. Referenced Specifications, Codes and Standards
- A3. Materials
- A4. Structural Design Drawings and Specifications

#### A1. SCOPE

The Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings, hereafter referred to as these Provisions, shall govern the design, fabrication and erection of structural steel members and connections in the seismic force-resisting systems (SFRS), and splices and bases of columns in gravity framing systems of buildings and other structures with moment frames, braced frames and shear walls. Other structures are defined as those structures designed, fabricated and erected in a manner similar to buildings, with building-like vertical and lateral force-resisting elements. These Provisions shall apply to the design of seismic force-resisting systems of structural steel or of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete, unless specifically exempted by the applicable building code. Wherever these Provisions refer to the applicable building code and there is none, the loads, load combinations, system limitations, and general design requirements shall be those in ASCE/SEI 7.

**User Note:** ASCE/SEI 7 (Table 12.2-1, Item H) specifically exempts structural steel systems in seismic design categories B and C from the requirements in these Provisions if they are designed in accordance with the AISC Specification for Structural Steel Buildings and the seismic loads are computed using a seismic response modification factor,  $R$ , of 3; composite systems are not covered by this exemption. These Provisions do not apply in seismic design category A.

**User Note:** ASCE/SEI (Table 15.4-1) permits certain nonbuilding structures to be designed in accordance with the AISC Specification for

Structural Steel Buildings in lieu of the Provisions with an appropriately reduced R factor.

**User Note:** Composite seismic force-resisting systems include those systems with members of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete, as well as systems in which structural steel members and reinforced concrete members act together to form a seismic force-resisting system.

These Provisions shall be applied in conjunction with the AISC Specification for Structural Steel Buildings, hereafter referred to as the Specification. All requirements of the Specification are applicable unless otherwise stated in these Provisions. Members and connections of the SFRS shall satisfy the requirements of the applicable building code, the Specification, and these Provisions. The phrases “is permitted” and “are permitted” in these Provisions identify provisions that comply with the Specification, but are not mandatory.

Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318), as modified in these Provisions, shall be used for the design and construction of reinforced concrete components in composite construction. For the SFRS in composite construction incorporating reinforced concrete components designed in accordance with ACI 318, the requirements of Specification Section B3.1, Design for Strength Using Load and Resistance Factor Design, shall be used.

## **A2. REFERENCED SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS**

The documents referenced in these Provisions shall include those listed in Specification Section A2 with the following additions:

### American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC)

ANSI/AISC 360-16 Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

ANSI/AISC 358-16 Prequalified Connections for Special and Intermediate Steel Moment Frames for Seismic Applications

### American Welding Society (AWS)

AWS D1.8/D1.8M:2016 Structural Welding Code—Seismic Supplement

AWS B4.0:2007 Standard Methods for Mechanical Testing of Welds (U.S. Customary Units)

AWS B4.0M:2000 Standard Methods for Mechanical Testing of Welds (Metric Customary Units)

AWS D1.4/D1.4M:2011 Structural Welding Code—Reinforcing Steel

## **A3. MATERIALS**

### **A3.1. Material Specifications**

Structural steel used in the seismic force-resisting system (SFRS) shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Section A3.1, except as modified in these Provisions. The specified minimum yield stress of structural steel to be used for members in which inelastic behavior is expected shall not exceed 50 ksi (345 MPa) for systems defined in Chapters E, F, G and H, except that for systems defined in Sections E1, F1, G1, H1 and H4 this limit shall not exceed 55 ksi (380 MPa). Either of these specified minimum yield stress limits are permitted to be exceeded when the suitability of the material is determined by testing or other rational criteria.

Exception: Specified minimum yield stress of structural steel shall not exceed 70 ksi (485 MPa) for columns in systems defined in Sections E3, E4, G3, H1, H2 and H3, and for columns in all systems in Chapter F. The structural steel used in the SFRS described in Chapters E, F, G and H shall meet one of the following ASTM Specifications:

(a) Hot-rolled structural shapes

ASTM A36/A36M  
 ASTM A529/A529M  
 ASTM A572/A572M [Gr. 42 (290), 50 (345) or 55 (380)]  
 ASTM A588/A588M  
 ASTM A913/A913M [Gr. 50 (345), 60 (415), 65 (450) or 70 (485)]  
 ASTM A992/A992M

(b) Hollow structural sections (HSS)

ASTM A500/A500M (Gr. B or C)  
 ASTM A501  
 ASTM A1085/A1085M  
 ASTM A53/A53M

(c) Plates

ASTM A36/A36M  
 ASTM A529/A529M  
 ASTM A572/A572M [Gr. 42 (290), 50 (345) or 55 (380)]  
 ASTM A588/A588M  
 ASTM A1011/A1011M HSLAS Gr. 55 (380)  
 ASTM A1043/A1043M

(d) Bars

ASTM A36/A36M  
 ASTM A529/A529M  
 ASTM A572/A572M [Gr. 42 (290), 50 (345) or 55 (380)]  
 ASTM A588/A588M

## (e) Sheets

ASTM A1011/A1011M HSLAS Gr. 55 (380)

The structural steel used for column base plates shall meet one of the preceding ASTM specifications or ASTM A283/A283M Grade D. Other steels and nonsteel materials in buckling-restrained braced frames are permitted to be used subject to the requirements of Sections F4 and K3.

**User Note:** This section only covers material properties for structural steel used in the SFRS and included in the definition of structural steel given in Section 2.1 of the AISC Code of Standard Practice. Other steel, such as cables for permanent bracing, is not covered. Steel reinforcement used in components in composite SFRS is covered in Section A3.5.

**A3.2. Expected Material Strength**

When required in these Provisions, the required strength of an element (a member or a connection of a member) shall be determined from the expected yield stress,  $R_y F_y$ , of the member or an adjoining member, as applicable, where  $F_y$  is the specified minimum yield stress of the steel to be used in the member and  $R_y$  is the ratio of the expected yield stress to the specified minimum yield stress,  $F_y$ , of that material.

When required to determine the nominal strength,  $R_n$ , for limit states within the same member from which the required strength is determined, the expected yield stress,  $R_y F_y$ , and the expected tensile strength,  $R_t F_u$ , are permitted to be used in lieu of  $F_y$  and  $F_u$ , respectively, where  $F_u$  is the specified minimum tensile strength and  $R_t$  is the ratio of the expected tensile strength to the specified minimum tensile strength,  $F_u$ , of that material.

**User Note:** In several instances a member, or a connection limit state within that member, is required to be designed for forces corresponding to the expected strength of the member itself. Such cases include determination of the nominal strength,  $R_n$ , of the beam outside of the link in eccentrically braced frames, diagonal brace rupture limit states (block shear rupture and net section rupture in the diagonal brace in SCBF), etc. In such cases it is permitted to use the expected material strength in the determination of available member strength. For connecting elements and for other members, specified material strength should be used.

The values of  $R_y$  and  $R_t$  for various steel and steel reinforcement materials are given in Table A3.1. Other values of  $R_y$  and  $R_t$  are permitted if the values are determined by testing of specimens, similar in size and source to the materials to be used, conducted in accordance with the testing

177 requirements per the ASTM specifications for the specified grade of  
178 steel.  
179

DRAFT

| <b>TABLE A3.1</b><br><b><math>R_y</math> and <math>R_t</math> Values for Steel and Steel Reinforcement Materials</b>  |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <b>Application</b>  | <b><math>R_y</math></b>                                     | <b><math>R_t</math></b>                                     |
| Hot-rolled structural shapes and bars: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ASTM A36/A36M</li> <li>• ASTM A1043/A1043M Gr. 36 (250)</li> <li>• ASTM A992/A992M</li> <li>• ASTM A572/A572M Gr. 50 (345) or 55 (380)</li> <li>• ASTM A913/A913M Gr. 50 (345), 60 (415), 65 (450), or 70 (485)</li> <li>• ASTM A588/A588M</li> <li>• ASTM A1043/A1043M Gr. 50 (345)</li> <li>• ASTM A529 Gr. 50 (345)</li> <li>• ASTM A529 Gr. 55 (380)</li> </ul> | 1.5<br>1.3<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.2<br>1.2<br>1.1 | 1.2<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.2<br>1.2 |
| Hollow structural sections (HSS): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ASTM A500/A500M Gr. B</li> <li>• ASTM A500/A500M Gr. C</li> <li>• ASTM A501</li> <li>• ASTM A53/A53M</li> <li>• ASTM A1085/A1085M</li> </ul>   | 1.4<br>1.3<br>1.4<br>1.6<br>1.25                            | 1.3<br>1.2<br>1.3<br>1.2<br>1.15                            |
| Plates, Strips and Sheets: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ASTM A36/A36M</li> <li>• ASTM A1043/A1043M Gr. 36 (250)</li> <li>• ASTM A1011/A1011M HSLAS Gr. 55 (380)</li> <li>• ASTM A572/A572M Gr. 42 (290)</li> <li>• ASTM A572/A572M Gr. 50 (345), Gr. 55 (380)</li> <li>• ASTM A588/A588M</li> <li>• ASTM A1043/A1043M Gr. 50 (345)</li> </ul>   | 1.3<br>1.3<br>1.1<br>1.3<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.2               | 1.2<br>1.1<br>1.1<br>1.0<br>1.2<br>1.2<br>1.1               |
| Steel Reinforcement:  |   |   |

|   |     |     |
|---|-----|-----|
| • ASTM A615/A615M Gr. 60 (420)                  | 1.2 | 1.2 |
| • ASTM A615/A615M Gr. 75 (520) and Gr. 80 (550) | 1.1 | 1.2 |
| • ASTM A706/A706M Gr. 60 (420) and Gr. 80 (550) | 1.2 | 1.2 |

**User Note:** The expected compressive strength of concrete may be estimated using values from Seismic Rehabilitation of Existing Buildings (ASCE/SEI 41-13).

### A3.3. Heavy Sections

For structural steel in the SFRS, in addition to the requirements of Specification Section A3.1c, hot rolled shapes with flange thickness equal to or greater than 1½ in. (38 mm) shall have a minimum Charpy V-notch toughness of 20 ft-lb (27 J) at 70°F (21°C), tested in the alternate core location as described in ASTM A6 Supplementary Requirement S30. Plates with thickness equal to or greater than 2 in. (50 mm) shall have a minimum Charpy V-notch toughness of 20 ft-lb (27 J) at 70°F (21°C), measured at any location permitted by ASTM A673, Frequency P, where the plate is used for the following:

- (a) Members built up from plate
- (b) Connection plates where inelastic strain under seismic loading is expected
- (c) The steel core of buckling-restrained braces

### A3.4. Consumables for Welding

#### A3.4a. Seismic Force-Resisting System Welds

All welds used in members and connections in the SFRS shall be made with filler metals meeting the requirements specified in clause 6.3 of Structural Welding Code—Seismic Supplement (AWS D1.8/D1.8M), hereafter referred to as AWS D1.8/D1.8M.

**User Note:** AWS D1.8/D1.8M clauses 6.3.5, 6.3.6, 6.3.7 and 6.3.8 apply only to demand critical welds.

#### A3.4b. Demand Critical Welds

Welds designated as demand critical shall be made with filler metals meeting the requirements specified in AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 6.3.

**User Note:** AWS D1.8/D1.8M requires that all seismic force-resisting system welds are to be made with filler metals classified using AWS A5 standards that achieve the following mechanical properties:

| Filler Metal Classification Properties for Seismic Force-Resisting System Welds   |   |                     |                                     |
|---|---|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Property  | Classification                              |                     |                                     |
|   | 70 ksi<br>(480 MPa)                         | 80 ksi<br>(550 MPa) | 90 ksi<br>(620 MPa)                 |
| Yield Strength,<br>ksi (MPa)  | 58<br>(400) min.                            | 68<br>(470) min.    | 78<br>(540) min.                    |
| Tensile Strength,<br>ksi (MPa)  | 70<br>(480) min.                            | 80<br>(550) min.    | 90<br>(620) min.                    |
| Elongation, %   | 22 min.                                     | 19 min.             | 17 min.                             |
| CVN Toughness,<br>ft-lb (J)   | 20 (27) min. @ 0 °F<br>(−18°C) <sup>a</sup> |                     | 25 (34) min.<br>@ −25 °F<br>(−32°C) |
| <sup>a</sup> Filler metals classified as meeting 20 ft-lbf (27 J) min. at a temperature lower than 0 °F (−18°C) also meet this requirement. |   |                     |                                     |

In addition to the above requirements, AWS D1.8/D1.8M requires, unless otherwise exempted from testing, that all demand critical welds are to be made with filler metals receiving Heat Input Envelope Testing that achieve the following mechanical properties in the weld metal:

| Mechanical Properties for Demand Critical Welds  |   |                     |                               |
|--|---|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| Property   | Classification                                |                     |                               |
|  | 70 ksi<br>(480 MPa)                           | 80 ksi<br>(550 MPa) | 90 ksi<br>(620 MPa)           |
| Yield Strength,<br>ksi (MPa)   | 58<br>(400) min.                              | 68<br>(470) min.    | 78<br>(540) min.              |
| Tensile Strength,<br>ksi (MPa)   | 70<br>(480) min.                              | 80<br>(550) min.    | 90<br>(620) min.              |
| Elongation (%)   | 22 min.                                       | 19 min.             | 17 min.                       |
| CVN Toughness,<br>ft-lb (J)  | 40 (54) min. @ 70°F<br>(20°C) <sup>b, c</sup> |                     | 40 (54) min. @<br>50°F (10°C) |
| <sup>b</sup> For LAST of +50°F (+10°C). For LAST less than + 50°F (+10°C), see AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 6.3.6.<br><sup>c</sup> Tests conducted in accordance with AWS D1.8/D1.8M Annex A meeting 40 ft-lb (54 J) min. at a temperature lower than +70°F (+20°C) also meet this requirement. |   |                     |                               |

### A3.5. Concrete and Steel Reinforcement

Concrete and steel reinforcement used in composite components in composite intermediate or special SFRS of Sections G2, G3, G4, H2, H3, H5, H6 and H7 shall satisfy the requirements of ACI 318 Chapter 18. Concrete and steel reinforcement used in composite components in composite ordinary SFRS of Sections G1, H1 and H4 shall satisfy the requirements of ACI 318 Section 18.2.1.4.

## **A4. STRUCTURAL DESIGN DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS**

### **A4.1. General**

Structural design drawings and specifications shall indicate the work to be performed, and include items required by the Specification, the AISC Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges, the applicable building code, and the following, as applicable:

- (a) Designation of the SFRS
- (b) Identification of the members and connections that are part of the SFRS
- (c) Locations and dimensions of protected zones
- (d) Connection details between concrete floor diaphragms and the structural steel elements of the SFRS
- (e) Shop drawing and erection drawing requirements not addressed in Section I1

### **A4.2. Steel Construction**

In addition to the requirements of Section A4.1, structural design drawings and specifications for steel construction shall indicate the following items, as applicable:

- (a) Configuration of the connections
- (b) Connection material specifications and sizes
- (c) Locations of demand critical welds
- (d) Locations where gusset plates are to be detailed to accommodate inelastic rotation
- (e) Locations of connection plates requiring Charpy V-notch toughness in accordance with Section A3.3(b)
- (f) Lowest anticipated service temperature of the steel structure, if the structure is not enclosed and maintained at a temperature of 50°F (10°C) or higher

- 265 (g) Locations where weld backing is required to be removed
- 266 (h) Locations where fillet welds are required when weld backing is
- 267 permitted to remain
- 268 (i) Locations where fillet welds are required to reinforce groove
- 269 welds or to improve connection geometry
- 270 (j) Locations where weld tabs are required to be removed
- 271 (k) Splice locations where tapered transitions are required
- 272 (l) The shape of weld access holes, if a shape other than those
- 273 provided for in the Specification is required
- 274 (m) Joints or groups of joints in which a specific assembly order,
- 275 welding sequence, welding technique or other special precautions
- 276 where such items are designated to be submitted to the engineer of
- 277 record
- 278

#### 279 **A4.3. Composite Construction**

280 In addition to the requirements of Section A4.1 and the requirements of  
 281 Section A4.2, as applicable, for the steel components of reinforced  
 282 concrete or composite elements, structural design drawings and  
 283 specifications for composite construction shall indicate the following  
 284 items, as applicable:

- 285 (a) Bar placement, cutoffs, lap and mechanical splices, hooks and
- 286 mechanical anchorage, placement of ties, and other transverse
- 287 reinforcement
- 288 (b) Requirements for dimensional changes resulting from
- 289 temperature changes, creep and shrinkage
- 290 (c) Location, magnitude and sequencing of any prestressing or post-
- 291 tensioning present
- 292 (d) Location of steel headed stud anchors and welded reinforcing bar
- 293 anchors

## CHAPTER B

### GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

This chapter addresses the general requirements for the seismic design of steel structures that are applicable to all chapters of the Provisions.

This chapter is organized as follows:

- B1. General Seismic Design Requirements
- B2. Loads and Load Combinations
- B3. Design Basis
- B4. System Type

#### B1. GENERAL SEISMIC DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

The required strength and other seismic design requirements for seismic design categories, risk categories, and the limitations on height and irregularity shall be as specified in the applicable building code.

The design story drift and the limitations on story drift shall be determined as required in the applicable building code.

#### B2. LOADS AND LOAD COMBINATIONS

Where the required strength defined in these Provisions refers to the capacity-limited seismic load, the capacity-limited horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be determined in accordance with these Provisions, substituted for  $E_{mh}$ , and applied as prescribed by the load combinations in the applicable building code.

Where the required strength defined in these Provisions refers to the overstrength seismic load, the horizontal seismic load effect including overstrength shall be determined using the overstrength factor,  $\Omega_o$ , and applied as prescribed by the load combinations in the applicable building code. Where the required strength refers to the overstrength seismic load, it is permitted to use the capacity-limited seismic load instead.

**User Note:** The seismic load effect including overstrength is defined in ASCE/SEI 7, Section 12.4.3. In ASCE/SEI 7 Section 12.4.3.1, the horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{mh}$ , is determined using Equation 12.4-7:  $E_{mh} = \Omega_o Q_E$ . There is a cap on the value of  $E_{mh}$ : it need not be taken larger than  $E_{cl}$ . Thus, in effect, where these Provisions refer to overstrength seismic load,  $E_{mh}$  is permitted to be based upon the overstrength factor,  $\Omega_o$ , or  $E_{cl}$ . However, where capacity-limited seismic load is required, it is

1236 intended that  $E_{cl}$  replace  $E_{mh}$  as specified in ASCE/SEI 7 Section 12.4.3.2  
 1237 and use of ASCE/SEI 7 Equation 12.4-7 is not permitted.

1238 In composite construction, incorporating reinforced concrete components  
 1239 designed in accordance with the requirements of ACI 318, the  
 1240 requirements of Specification Section B3.1, Design for Strength Using  
 1241 Load and Resistance Factor Design, shall be used for the seismic force-  
 1242 resisting system (SFRS).

### 1243 **B3. DESIGN BASIS**

#### 1244 **B3.1. Required Strength**

1245 The required strength of structural members and connections shall be the  
 1246 greater of:

1247 (a) The required strength as determined by structural analysis for the  
 1248 applicable load combinations, as stipulated in the applicable  
 1249 building code, and in Chapter C

1250 (b) The required strength given in Chapters D, E, F, G and H

#### 1251 **B3.2. Available Strength**

1252 The available strength is stipulated as the design strength,  $\phi R_n$ , for design  
 1253 in accordance with the provisions for load and resistance factor design  
 1254 (LRFD) and the allowable strength,  $R_n/\Omega$ , for design in accordance with  
 1255 the provisions for allowable strength design (ASD). The available  
 1256 strength of systems, members and connections shall be determined in  
 1257 accordance with the Specification, except as modified throughout these  
 1258 Provisions.

### 1259 **B4. SYSTEM TYPE**

1260 The seismic force-resisting system (SFRS) shall contain one or more  
 1261 moment frame, braced frame or shear wall system conforming to the  
 1262 requirements of one of the seismic systems designated in Chapters E, F,  
 1263 G and H.

### 1264 **B5. DIAPHRAGMS, CHORDS AND COLLECTORS**

#### 1265 **B5.1. General**

1266 Diaphragms and chords shall be designed for the loads and load  
 1267 combinations in the applicable building code. Collectors shall be  
 1268 designed for the load combinations in the applicable building code,  
 1269 including overstrength.

#### 1270 **B5.2. Truss Diaphragms**

1271 When a truss is used as a diaphragm, all members of the truss and their  
 1272 connections shall be designed for forces calculated using the load  
 1273 combinations of the applicable building code, including overstrength.

1274 Exceptions:

1275 (a) The forces specified in this section need not be applied to the  
 1276 diagonal members of the truss diaphragms and their connections  
 1277 where these members and connections conform to the  
 1278 requirements of Sections F2.4a, F2.5a, F2.5b and F2.6c. Braces in  
 1279 K- or V- configurations and braces supporting gravity loads other  
 1280 than self-weight are not permitted under this exception.

**User Note:** Chords in truss diaphragms serve a function analogous to columns in vertical special concentrically braced frames, and should meet the requirements for highly ductile members as required for columns in Section F2.5a.

1286 (b) The forces specified in this section need not be applied to truss  
 1287 diaphragms designed as a part of a three-dimensional system in  
 1288 which the seismic force-resisting system types consist of ordinary  
 1289 moment frames, ordinary concentrically braced frames, or  
 1290 combinations thereof, and truss diagonal members conform to  
 1291 Sections F1.4b and F1.5 and connections conform to Section  
 1292 F1.6.  
 1293  
 1294  
 1295

## CHAPTER C

### ANALYSIS

This chapter addresses design related analysis requirements. The chapter is organized as follows:

- C1. General Requirements
- C2. Additional Requirements
- C3. Nonlinear Analysis

#### **C1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

An analysis conforming to the requirements of the applicable building code and the Specification shall be performed for design of the system.

When the design is based upon elastic analysis, the stiffness properties of component members of steel systems shall be based on elastic sections and those of composite systems shall include the effects of cracked sections.

#### **C2. ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

Additional analysis shall be performed as specified in Chapters E, F, G and H of these Provisions.

#### **C3. NONLINEAR ANALYSIS**

When nonlinear analysis is used to satisfy the requirements of these Provisions, it shall be performed in accordance with the applicable building code.

**User Note:** ASCE/SEI 7 permits nonlinear analysis by a response history procedure. Material and geometric nonlinearities are to be included in the analytical model. The main purpose is to determine expected member inelastic deformations and story drifts under representative ground motions. The analysis results also provide values of maximum expected internal forces at locations such as column splices, which can be used as upper limits on required strength for design.

## CHAPTER D

### GENERAL MEMBER AND CONNECTION DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

This chapter addresses general requirements for the design of members and connections.

The chapter is organized as follows:

D1. Member Requirements

D2. Connections

D3. Deformation Compatibility of Non-SFRS Members and Connections

D4. H-Piles

### D1. MEMBER REQUIREMENTS

Members of moment frames, braced frames and shear walls in the seismic force-resisting system (SFRS) shall comply with the Specification and this section.

#### D1.1. Classification of Sections for Ductility

When required for the systems defined in Chapters E, F, G, H and Section D4, members designated as moderately ductile members or highly ductile members shall comply with this section.

##### D1.1a. Section Requirements for Ductile Members

Structural steel sections for both moderately ductile members and highly ductile members shall have flanges continuously connected to the web or webs.

Encased composite columns shall comply with the requirements of Section D1.4b.1 for moderately ductile members and Section D1.4b.2 for highly ductile members.

Filled composite columns shall comply with the requirements of Section D1.4c for both moderately and highly ductile members.

Concrete sections shall comply with the requirements of ACI 318 Section 18.4 for moderately ductile members and ACI 318 Section 18.6 and 18.7 for highly ductile members.

##### D1.1b. Width-to-Thickness Limitations of Steel and Composite Sections

For members designated as moderately ductile members, the width-to-thickness ratios of compression elements shall not exceed the limiting width-to-thickness ratios,  $\lambda_{md}$ , from Table D1.1.

1534 For members designated as highly ductile members, the width-to-  
1535 thickness ratios of compression elements shall not exceed the limiting  
1536 width-to-thickness ratios,  $\lambda_{hd}$ , from Table D1.1.

1537

1538

1539

1540

1541

1542

1543

1544

1545

1546

1547

1548

1549

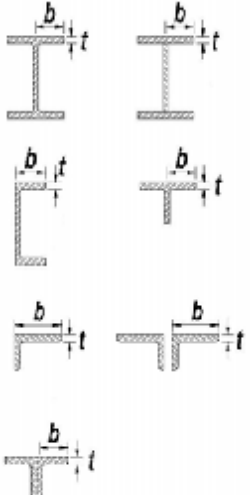

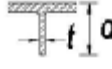
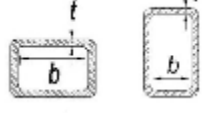
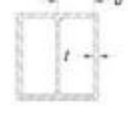
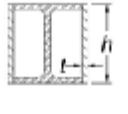

1550

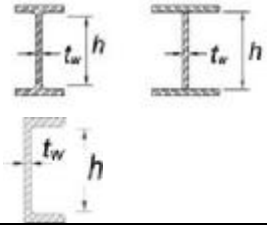
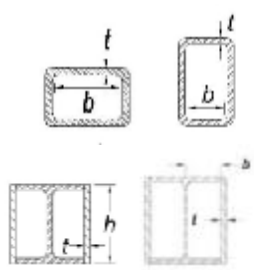
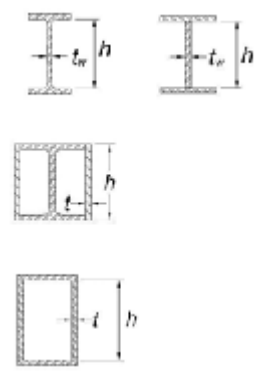
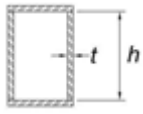
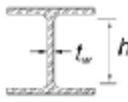
1551


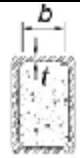

1552

1553

1554

| <b>TABLE D1.1</b><br><b>Limiting Width-to-Thickness Ratios for Compression Elements</b><br><b>For Moderately Ductile and Highly Ductile Members</b> |  |                          |  |  |   |
|---|--|--------------------------|--|--|---|
| Description of Element  |  | Width-to-Thickness Ratio | Limiting Width-to-Thickness Ratio        |  | Example   |
|   |  |                          | $\lambda_{hd}$<br>Highly Ductile Members | $\lambda_{md}$<br>Moderately Ductile Members |   |
| Unstiffened Elements  | Flanges of rolled or built-up I-shaped sections, channels and tees; legs of single angles or double angle members with separators; outstanding legs of pairs of angles in continuous contact | b/t                      | $0.32 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$          | $0.40 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$              |    |
|   | Flanges of H-pile sections per Section D4  | b/t                      | not applicable                           | $0.48 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$              |   |
|   | Stems of tees  | d/t                      | $0.32 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}^{[a]}$    | $0.40 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$              |  |
| Stiffened Elements  | Walls of rectangular HSS used as diagonal braces   | b/t                      | $0.65 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$          | $0.76 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$              |  |
|   | Flanges of boxed I-shaped sections   | b/t                      |  |  |  |
|   | Side plates of boxed I-shaped sections and walls of built-up box shapes used as diagonal braces  | h/t                      |  |  |  |
|   | Flanges of built-up box shapes used as link beams  | b/t                      |  |  |  |

|                    |   |                                   |  |  |   |
|--------------------|---|-----------------------------------|--|--|---|
|                    | Webs of rolled or built-up I shaped sections and channels used as diagonal braces   | $h/t_w$                           | $1.57 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$  | $1.57 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$  |    |
| Stiffened Elements | Where used in beams or columns as flanges in uniform compression due to axial, flexure, or combined axial and flexure:<br>1) Walls of rectangular HSS<br>2) Flanges and side plates of boxed I-shaped sections, webs and flanges of built-up box shapes   | $b/t$<br><br>$b/t, h/t$           | $0.65 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$  | $1.18 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$  |    |
|                    | Where used in beams, columns, or links, as webs in flexure, or combined axial and flexure:<br>1) Webs of rolled or built-up I-shaped sections or channels <sup>[b]</sup><br>2) Side plates of boxed I-shaped sections<br>3) Webs of built-up box sections | $h/t_w$<br><br>$h/t$<br><br>$h/t$ | For $C_a \leq 0.114$<br>$2.57 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}} (1 - 1.04 C_a)$<br>For $C_a > 0.114$<br>$0.88 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}} (2.68 - C_a)$<br>$\geq 1.57 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$<br>where<br>$C_a = \frac{P_u}{\phi_c P_y}$ (LRFD)<br>$C_a = \frac{\Omega_c P_a}{P_y}$ (ASD)<br>$P_y = R_y F_y A_g$ | For $C_a \leq 0.114$<br>$3.96 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}} (1 - 3.04 C_a)$<br>For $C_a > 0.114$<br>$1.29 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}} (2.12 - C_a)$<br>$\geq 1.57 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$<br>where<br>$C_a = \frac{P_u}{\phi_c P_y}$ (LRFD)<br>$C_a = \frac{\Omega_c P_a}{P_y}$ (ASD)<br>$P_y = R_y F_y A_g$ |  |
|                    | Webs of built-up box sections used as EBF links   | $h/t$                             | $0.67 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$  | $1.75 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$  |  |
|                    | Webs of H-Pile sections   | $h/t_w$                           | not applicable   | $1.57 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$  |  |
|                    |   |                                   |  |  |   |

|   |   |     |                                 |                                 |   |
|---|---|-----|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
|   | Walls of round HSS                            | D/t | $0.053 \frac{E}{R_y F_y}$       | $0.062 \frac{E}{R_y F_y}^{[c]}$ |  |
| Composite Elements  | Walls of rectangular filled composite members | b/t | $1.48 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$ | $2.37 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$ |  |
|   | Walls of round filled composite members       | D/t | $0.085 \frac{E}{R_y F_y}$       | $0.17 \frac{E}{R_y F_y}$        |  |
| <p><sup>[a]</sup> For tee shaped compression members, the limiting width-to-thickness ratio for highly ductile members for the stem of the tee shall be <math>0.40 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}</math> where either of the following conditions are satisfied:</p> <p>(1) Buckling of the compression member occurs about the plane of the stem.</p> <p>(2) The axial compression load is transferred at end connections to only the outside face of the flange of the tee resulting in an eccentric connection that reduces the compression stresses at the tip of the stem.</p> <p><sup>[b]</sup> For I-shaped beams in SMF systems, where <math>C_a</math> is less than or equal to 0.114, the limiting ratio <math>h/t_w</math> shall not exceed <math>2.57 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}</math>. For I-shaped beams in IMF systems, where <math>C_a</math> is less than or equal to 0.114, the limiting width-to-thickness ratio shall not exceed <math>3.96 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}</math></p> <p><sup>[c]</sup> The limiting diameter-to-thickness ratio of round HSS members used as beams or columns shall not exceed <math>0.077 \frac{E}{R_y F_y}</math></p> |   |     |                                 |                                 |   |

## D1.2. Stability Bracing of Beams

When required in Chapters E, F, G and H, stability bracing shall be provided as required in this section to restrain lateral-torsional buckling of structural steel or concrete-encased beams subject to flexure and designated as moderately ductile members or highly ductile members.

**User Note:** In addition to the requirements in Chapters E, F, G and H to provide stability bracing for various beam members such as intermediate and special moment frame beams, stability bracing is also required for columns in the special cantilever column system (SCCS) in Section E6.

### D1.2a. Moderately Ductile Members

#### 1. Steel Beams

The bracing of moderately ductile steel beams shall satisfy the following requirements:

(a) Both flanges of beams shall be laterally braced or the beam cross section shall be braced with point torsional bracing.

(b) Beam bracing shall meet the requirements of Appendix 6 of the Specification for lateral or torsional bracing of beams, where the required flexural strength of the member shall be:

$$M_r = R_y F_y Z / \alpha_s \quad (D1-1)$$

where

$$C_d = 1.0$$

$R_y$  = ratio of the expected yield stress to the specified minimum yield stress

$Z$  = plastic section modulus about the axis of bending, in.<sup>3</sup> (mm<sup>3</sup>)

$\alpha_s$  = LRFD-ASD force level adjustment factor  
= 1.0 for LRFD and 1.5 for ASD

(c) Beam bracing shall have a maximum spacing of

$$L_b = 0.19 r_y E / (R_y F_y) \quad (D1-2)$$

## 2. Concrete-Encased Composite Beams

The bracing of moderately ductile concrete-encased composite beams shall satisfy the following requirements:

(a) Both flanges of members shall be laterally braced or the beam cross section shall be braced with point torsional bracing.

(b) Lateral bracing shall meet the requirements of Appendix 6 of the Specification for lateral or torsional bracing of beams, where  $M_r = M_{p,exp}$  of the beam as specified in Section G2.6d, and  $C_d = 1.0$ .

(c) Member bracing shall have a maximum spacing of

$$L_b = 0.19 r_y E / (R_y F_y) \quad (D1-3)$$

using the material properties of the steel section and  $r_y$  in the plane of buckling calculated based on the elastic transformed section.

### D1.2b. Highly Ductile Members

In addition to the requirements of Sections D1.2a.1(a) and (b), and D1.2a.2(a) and (b), the bracing of highly ductile beam members shall

1604 have a maximum spacing of  $L_b = 0.095r_y E / (R_y F_y)$ . For concrete-encased  
 1605 composite beams, the material properties of the steel section shall be used  
 1606 and the calculation for  $r_y$  in the plane of buckling shall be based on the  
 1607 elastic transformed section.

## 1608 **D1.2c. Special Bracing at Plastic Hinge Locations**

1609 Special bracing shall be located adjacent to expected plastic hinge  
 1610 locations where required by Chapters E, F, G or H.

### 1611 **1. Steel Beams**

1612 For structural steel beams, such bracing shall satisfy the following  
 1613 requirements:

- 1614 (a) Both flanges of beams shall be laterally braced or the  
 1615 member cross section shall be braced with point torsional  
 1616 bracing.
- 1617 (b) The required strength of lateral bracing of each flange  
 1618 provided adjacent to plastic hinges shall be:

$$1619 \quad P_r = 0.06 R_y F_y Z / (\alpha_s h_o) \quad (D1-4)$$

1620 where

1621  $h_o$  = distance between flange centroids, in. (mm)

1622 The required strength of torsional bracing provided  
 1623 adjacent to plastic hinges shall be:

$$1624 \quad M_r = 0.06 R_y F_y Z / \alpha_s \quad (D1-5)$$

- 1625 (c) The required bracing stiffness shall satisfy the  
 1626 requirements of Appendix 6 of the Specification for  
 1627 lateral or torsional bracing of beams with  $C_d = 1.0$  and  
 1628 where the required flexural strength of the beam shall be  
 1629 taken as:

$$1630 \quad M_r = R_y F_y Z / \alpha_s \quad (D1-6)$$

### 1631 **2. Concrete-Encased Composite Beams**

1632 For concrete-encased composite beams, such bracing shall satisfy  
 1633 the following requirements:

- 1634 (a) Both flanges of beams shall be laterally braced or the  
 1635 beam cross section shall be braced with point torsional  
 1636 bracing.

- (b) The required strength of lateral bracing provided adjacent to plastic hinges shall be

$$P_u = 0.06M_{p,exp} / h_o \quad (D1-7)$$

of the beam, where

$M_{p,exp}$  = expected flexural strength of the steel, concrete-encased or composite beam, kip-in. (N-mm); determined in accordance with Section G2.6d.

The required strength for torsional bracing provided adjacent to plastic hinges shall be  $M_u = 0.06M_{p,exp}$  of the beam.

- (c) The required bracing stiffness shall satisfy the requirements of Appendix 6 of the Specification for lateral or torsional bracing of beams where  $M_r = M_u = M_{p,exp}$  of the beam is determined in accordance with Section G2.6d, and  $C_d = 1.0$ .

### D1.3. Protected Zones

Discontinuities specified in Section I2.1 resulting from fabrication and erection procedures and from other attachments are prohibited in the area of a member or a connection element designated as a protected zone by these Provisions or ANSI/AISC 358.

Exception: Welded steel headed stud anchors and other connections are permitted in protected zones when designated in ANSI/AISC 358, or as otherwise determined with a connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or as determined in a program of qualification testing in accordance with Sections K2 and K3.

### D1.4. Columns

Columns in moment frames, braced frames and shear walls shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

#### D1.4a. Required Strength

The required strength of columns in the SFRS shall be determined from the greater effect of the following:

- (a) The load effect resulting from the analysis requirements for the applicable system per Sections E, F, G and H.
- (b) The compressive axial strength and tensile strength as determined using the overstrength seismic load. It is permitted to neglect

1675 applied moments in this determination unless the moment results  
 1676 from a load applied to the column between points of lateral  
 1677 support.

1678 For columns that are common to intersecting frames, determination of the  
 1679 required axial strength, including the overstrength seismic load or the  
 1680 capacity-limited seismic load, as applicable, shall consider the potential  
 1681 for simultaneous inelasticity from all such frames. The direction of  
 1682 application of the load in each such frame shall be selected to produce the  
 1683 most severe load effect on the column.

1684 Exceptions:

- 1685 (a) It is permitted to limit the required axial strength for such  
 1686 columns based on a three-dimensional nonlinear analysis in  
 1687 which ground motion is simultaneously applied in two orthogonal  
 1688 directions, in accordance with Section C3.
- 1689 (b) Columns common to intersecting frames that are part of Sections  
 1690 E1, F1, G1, H1, H4 or combinations thereof need not be designed  
 1691 for these loads.

#### 1692 **D1.4b. Encased Composite Columns**

1693 Encased composite columns shall satisfy the requirements of  
 1694 Specification Chapter I, in addition to the requirements of this section.  
 1695 Additional requirements, as specified for moderately ductile members  
 1696 and highly ductile members in Sections D1.4b.1 and 2, shall apply as  
 1697 required in the descriptions of the composite seismic systems in Chapters  
 1698 G and H.

##### 1699 **1. Moderately Ductile Members**

1700 Encased composite columns used as moderately ductile members shall  
 1701 satisfy the following requirements:

- 1702 (a) The maximum spacing of transverse reinforcement at the  
 1703 top and bottom shall be the least of the following:
  - 1704 (1) one-half the least dimension of the section
  - 1705 (2) 8 longitudinal bar diameters
  - 1706 (3) 24 tie bar diameters
  - 1707 (4) 12 in. (300 mm)
- 1708 (b) This spacing shall be maintained over a vertical distance  
 1709 equal to the greatest of the following lengths, measured  
 1710 from each joint face and on both sides of any section  
 1711 where flexural yielding is expected to occur:

- 1712 (1) one-sixth the vertical clear height of the column
- 1713 (2) the maximum cross-sectional dimension
- 1714 (3) 18 in. (450 mm)
- 1715 (c) Tie spacing over the remaining column length shall not
- 1716 exceed twice the spacing defined in Section D1.4b.1(1).
- 1717 (d) Splices and end bearing details for encased composite
- 1718 columns in composite ordinary SFRS of Sections G1, H1
- 1719 and H4 shall satisfy the requirements of the Specification
- 1720 and ACI 318 Section 10.7. The design shall comply with
- 1721 ACI 318 Sections 18.2.7 and 18.2.8. The design shall
- 1722 consider any adverse behavioral effects due to abrupt
- 1723 changes in either the member stiffness or the nominal
- 1724 tensile strength. Transitions to reinforced concrete
- 1725 sections without embedded structural steel members,
- 1726 transitions to bare structural steel sections, and column
- 1727 bases shall be considered abrupt changes.
- 1728 (e) Welded wire fabric shall be prohibited as transverse
- 1729 reinforcement.

## 2. Highly Ductile Members

Encased composite columns used as highly ductile members shall satisfy Section D1.4b.1 in addition to the following requirements:

- (a) Longitudinal load-carrying reinforcement shall satisfy the requirements of ACI 318 Section 18.7.4.
- (b) Transverse reinforcement shall be hoop reinforcement as defined in ACI 318 Chapter 18 and shall satisfy the following requirements:
- (1) The minimum area of tie reinforcement,  $A_{sh}$ , shall be:

$$A_{sh} = 0.09h_{cc}s \left( 1 - \frac{F_y A_s}{P_n} \right) \left( \frac{f'_c}{F_{ysr}} \right) \quad (D1-8)$$

where

- $A_s$  = cross-sectional area of the structural steel core, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)
- $F_y$  = specified minimum yield stress of the structural steel core, ksi (MPa)
- $F_{ysr}$  = specified minimum yield stress of the ties, ksi (MPa)

|      |          |   |                                      |
|------|----------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1748 | $P_n$    | = | nominal compressive strength of      |
| 1749 |          |   | the composite column calculated      |
| 1750 |          |   | in accordance with the               |
| 1751 |          |   | Specification, kips (N)              |
| 1752 | $h_{cc}$ | = | cross-sectional dimension of the     |
| 1753 |          |   | confined core measured center-to-    |
| 1754 |          |   | center of the tie reinforcement, in. |
| 1755 |          |   | (mm)                                 |
| 1756 | $f'_c$   | = | specified compressive strength of    |
| 1757 |          |   | concrete, ksi (MPa)                  |
| 1758 | $s$      | = | spacing of transverse                |
| 1759 |          |   | reinforcement measured along the     |
| 1760 |          |   | longitudinal axis of the structural  |
| 1761 |          |   | member, in. (mm)                     |

1762 Equation D1-8 need not be satisfied if the nominal  
 1763 strength of the concrete-encased structural steel  
 1764 section alone is greater than the load effect from a  
 1765 load combination of  $1.0D+0.5L$ ,

1766 where

|      |     |   |                                    |
|------|-----|---|------------------------------------|
| 1768 | $D$ | = | dead load due to the weight of the |
| 1769 |     |   | structural elements and permanent  |
| 1770 |     |   | features on the building, kips (N) |
| 1771 | $L$ | = | live load due to occupancy and     |
| 1772 |     |   | moveable equipment, kips (N)       |

1773 (2) The maximum spacing of transverse  
 1774 reinforcement along the length of the column shall  
 1775 be the lesser of six longitudinal load-carrying bar  
 1776 diameters or 6 in. (150 mm).

1777 (3) Where transverse reinforcement is specified in  
 1778 Sections D1.4b.2(3), D1.4b.2(4), or D1.4b.2(5),  
 1779 the maximum spacing of transverse reinforcement  
 1780 along the member length shall be the lesser of  
 1781 one-fourth the least member dimension or 4 in.  
 1782 (100 mm).” Confining reinforcement shall be  
 1783 spaced not more than 14 in. (350 mm) on center in  
 1784 the transverse direction.

1785  
 1786 (c) Encased composite columns in braced frames with  
 1787 required compressive strengths greater than  $0.2P_n$ , not  
 1788 including the overstrength seismic load, shall have  
 1789 transverse reinforcement as specified in Section  
 1790 D1.4b.2(2)(iii) over the total element length. This  
 1791 requirement need not be satisfied if the nominal strength  
 1792 of the concrete-encased steel section alone is greater than

the load effect from a load combination of  $1.0D+0.5L$ .

- (d) Composite columns supporting reactions from discontinued stiff members, such as walls or braced frames, shall have transverse reinforcement as specified in Section D1.4b.2(2)(iii) over the full length beneath the level at which the discontinuity occurs if the required compressive strength exceeds  $0.1P_n$ , not including the overstrength seismic load. Transverse reinforcement shall extend into the discontinued member for at least the length required to develop full yielding in the concrete-encased steel section and longitudinal reinforcement. This requirement need not be satisfied if the nominal strength of the concrete-encased steel section alone is greater than the load effect from a load combination of  $1.0D+0.5L$ .
- (e) Encased composite columns used in a C-SMF shall satisfy the following requirements:
  - (1) Transverse reinforcement shall satisfy the requirements in Section D1.4b.2(2) at the top and bottom of the column over the region specified in Section D1.4b.1(2).
  - (2) The strong-column/weak-beam design requirements in Section G3.4a shall be satisfied. Column bases shall be detailed to sustain inelastic flexural hinging.
  - (3) The required shear strength of the column shall satisfy the requirements of ACI 318 Section 18.7.6.1.
- (f) When the column terminates on a footing or mat foundation, the transverse reinforcement as specified in this section shall extend into the footing or mat at least 12 in. (300 mm). When the column terminates on a wall, the transverse reinforcement shall extend into the wall for at least the length required to develop full yielding in the concrete-encased shape and longitudinal reinforcement.

#### **D1.4c. Filled Composite Columns**

This section applies to columns that meet the limitations of Specification Section I2.2. Such columns shall be designed to satisfy the requirements of Specification Chapter I, except that the nominal shear strength of the composite column shall be the nominal shear strength of the structural

1838 steel section alone, based on its effective shear area.

### 1839 **D1.5. Composite Slab Diaphragms**

1840  
1841 The design of composite floor and roof slab diaphragms for seismic  
1842 effects shall meet the following requirements.

#### 1843 **D1.5a. Load Transfer**

1844 Details shall be provided to transfer loads between the diaphragm and  
1845 boundary members, collector elements, and elements of the horizontal  
1846 framing system.

#### 1847 **D1.5b. Nominal Shear Strength**

1848 The nominal in-plane shear strength of composite diaphragms and  
1849 concrete slab on steel deck diaphragms shall be taken as the nominal  
1850 shear strength of the reinforced concrete above the top of the steel deck  
1851 ribs in accordance with ACI 318 excluding Chapter 14. Alternatively, the  
1852 composite diaphragm nominal shear strength shall be determined by in-  
1853 plane shear tests of concrete-filled diaphragms.

### 1854 **D1.6. BUILT-UP STRUCTURAL STEEL MEMBERS**

1855 This section addresses connections between components of built-up  
1856 members where specific requirements are not provided in the system  
1857 chapters of these Provisions or in ANSI/AISC 358.

1858  
1859 Connections between components of built-up members subject to  
1860 inelastic behavior shall be designed for the expected forces arising from  
1861 that inelastic behavior.

1862  
1863 Connections between components of built-up members where inelastic  
1864 behavior is not expected shall be designed for the load effect including  
1865 the overstrength seismic forces.

1866  
1867 Where connections between elements of a built-up member are required  
1868 in a protected zone, the connections shall have an available tensile  
1869 strength equal to  $R_y F_y t_p / \alpha_s$  of the weaker element for the length of the  
1870 protected zone.

1871 Built-up members may be used in connections requiring testing in  
1872 accordance with the Provisions provided they are accepted by  
1873 ANSI/AISC 358 for use in a prequalified joint or have been verified in a  
1874 qualification test.

## 1875 **D2. CONNECTIONS**

### 1876 **D2.1. General**

1877 Connections, joints and fasteners that are part of the SFRS shall comply  
1878 with Specification Chapter J, and with the additional requirements of this  
1879 section.

1880 Splices and bases of columns that are not designated as part of the SFRS  
1881 shall satisfy the requirements of Sections D2.5a, D2.5c and D2.6.

1882 Where protected zones are designated in connection elements by these  
1883 Provisions or ANSI/AISC 358, they shall satisfy the requirements of  
1884 Sections D1.3 and I2.1.

### 1885 **D2.2. Bolted Joints**

1886 Bolted joints shall satisfy the following requirements:

1887 (a) The available shear strength of bolted joints using standard holes  
1888 or short slotted holes perpendicular to the applied load shall be  
1889 calculated as that for bearing-type joints in accordance with  
1890 Specification Sections J3.6 and J3.10. The nominal bolt bearing  
1891 and tearout equations per Section J3.10 of the Specification where  
1892 deformation at the bolt hole at service load is a design  
1893 consideration shall be used.

1894 Exception: Where the required strength of a connection is based  
1895 upon the expected strength of a member or element, it is  
1896 permitted to use the bolt bearing and tearout equations in  
1897 accordance with Specification Section J3.10 where deformation is  
1898 not a design consideration.

1899 (b) Bolts and welds shall not be designed to share force in a joint or  
1900 the same force component in a connection.

1901 **User Note:** A member force, such as a diagonal brace axial force,  
1902 must be resisted at the connection entirely by one type of joint (in  
1903 other words, either entirely by bolts or entirely by welds). A  
1904 connection in which bolts resist a force that is normal to the force  
1905 resisted by welds, such as a moment connection in which welded  
1906 flanges transmit flexure and a bolted web transmits shear, is not  
1907 considered to be sharing the force.

1908 (c) Bolt holes shall be standard holes or short-slotted holes  
1909 perpendicular to the applied load in bolted joints where the  
1910 seismic load effects are transferred by shear in the bolts.  
1911 Oversized holes or short-slotted holes are permitted in  
1912 connections where the seismic load effects are transferred by  
1913 tension in the bolts but not by shear in the bolts.

- 1914 Exception:
- 1915 (1) For diagonal braces, oversized holes are permitted in one
- 1916 connection ply only when the connection is designed as a
- 1917 slip-critical joint.
- 1918 (2) Alternative hole types are permitted if designated in
- 1919 ANSI/AISC 358, or if otherwise determined in a connection
- 1920 prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or if
- 1921 determined in a program of qualification testing in accordance
- 1922 with Section K2 or Section K3.

**User Note:** Diagonal brace connections with oversized holes must also satisfy other limit states including bolt bearing and bolt shear for the required strength of the connection as defined in Sections F1, F2, F3 and F4.

- 1927 (d) All bolts shall be installed as pretensioned high-strength bolts.
- 1928 Faying surfaces shall satisfy the requirements for slip-critical
- 1929 connections in accordance with Specification Section J3.8 with a
- 1930 faying surface with a Class A slip coefficient or higher.

1931 Exceptions: Connection surfaces are permitted to have coatings

1932 with a slip coefficient less than that of a Class A faying surface

1933 for the following:

1934

- 1935 (1) End plate moment connections conforming to the
- 1936 requirements of Section E1, or ANSI/AISC 358
- 1937
- 1938 (2) Bolted joints where the seismic load effects are
- 1939 transferred either by tension in bolts or by compression
- 1940 bearing but not by shear in bolts
- 1941

### 1942 **D2.3. Welded Joints**

1943 Welded joints shall be designed in accordance with Chapter J of the

1944 Specification.

### 1945 **D2.4. Continuity Plates and Stiffeners**

1946 The design of continuity plates and stiffeners located in the webs of

1947 rolled shapes shall allow for the reduced contact lengths to the member

1948 flanges and web based on the corner clip sizes in Section I2.4.

### 1949 **D2.5. Column Splices**

#### 1950 **D2.5a. Location of Splices**

1951 For all building columns, including those not designated as part of the

1952 SFRS, column splices shall be located 4 ft (1.2 m) or more away from the  
1953 beam-to-column flange connections.

1954 Exceptions:

1955 (a) When the column clear height between beam-to-column flange  
1956 connections is less than 8 ft (2.4 m), splices shall be at half the  
1957 clear height

1958 (b) Column splices with webs and flanges joined by complete-joint-  
1959 penetration groove welds are permitted to be located closer to the  
1960 beam-to-column flange connections, but not less than the depth of  
1961 the column

1962 (c) Splices in composite columns

1963 **User Note:** Where possible, splices should be located at least 4 ft (1.2 m)  
1964 above the finished floor elevation to permit installation of perimeter  
1965 safety cables prior to erection of the next tier and to improve  
1966 accessibility.

## 1967 **D2.5b. Required Strength**

1968 The required strength of column splices in the SFRS shall be the greater  
1969 of:

1970 (a) The required strength of the columns, including that determined  
1971 from Chapters E, F, G and H and Section D1.4a; or,

1972 (b) The required strength determined using the overstrength seismic  
1973 load.

1974 In addition, welded column splices in which any portion of the column is  
1975 subject to a calculated net tensile load effect determined using the  
1976 overstrength seismic load shall satisfy all of the following requirements:

1977 (a) The available strength of partial-joint-penetration (PJP) groove  
1978 welded joints, if used, shall be at least equal to 200% of the  
1979 required strength. Exception: Partial-joint penetration (PJP)  
1980 groove welds are excluded from this requirement according to the  
1981 exceptions to Sections E2.6g, E3.6g and E4.6c.

1982 (b) The available strength for each flange splice shall be at least  
1983 equal to  $0.5R_yF_yb_ft_f/\alpha_s$ , where  $R_yF_y$  is the expected yield stress  
1984 of the column material and  $b_ft_f$  is the area of one flange of the  
1985 smaller column connected.

1986 (c) Where butt joints in column splices are made with complete-  
1987 joint-penetration groove welds, when tension stress at any

1988 location in the smaller flange exceeds  $0.30F_y/\alpha_s$  tapered  
 1989 transitions are required between flanges of unequal thickness or  
 1990 width. Such transitions shall be in accordance with AWS  
 1991 D1.8/D1.8M clause 4.2.

#### 1992 **D2.5c. Required Shear Strength**

1993 For all building columns including those not designated as part of the  
 1994 SFRS, the required shear strength of column splices with respect to both  
 1995 orthogonal axes of the column shall be  $M_{pc}/(\alpha_s H)$ , where  $M_{pc}$  is the  
 1996 lesser plastic flexural strength of the column sections for the direction in  
 1997 question, and H is the height of the story, which is permitted to be taken  
 1998 as the distance between the centerline of floor framing at each of the  
 1999 levels above and below, or the distance between the top of floor slabs at  
 2000 each of the levels above and below.

2001 The required shear strength of splices of columns in the SFRS shall be  
 2002 the greater of the above requirement or the required shear strength  
 2003 determined per Section D2.5b(a) and (b).

#### 2004 **D2.5d. Structural Steel Splice Configurations**

2005 Structural steel column splices are permitted to be either bolted or  
 2006 welded, or welded to one column and bolted to the other. Splice  
 2007 configurations shall meet all specific requirements in Chapters E, F, G or  
 2008 H.

2009 Splice plates or channels used for making web splices in SFRS columns  
 2010 shall be placed on both sides of the column web.

2011 For welded butt joint splices made with groove welds, weld tabs shall be  
 2012 removed in accordance with AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 6.11. Steel  
 2013 backing of groove welds need not be removed.

#### 2014 **D2.5e. Splices in Encased Composite Columns**

2015 For encased composite columns, column splices shall conform to Section  
 2016 D1.4b and ACI 318 Section 18.7.4.3.

#### 2017 **D2.6. Column Bases**

2018 The required strength of column bases, including those that are not  
 2019 designated as part of the SFRS, shall be calculated in accordance with  
 2020 this section.

2021 The available strength of steel elements at the column base, including  
 2022 base plates, anchor rods, stiffening plates, and shear lug elements shall be  
 2023 in accordance with the Specification.

2024 Where columns are welded to base plates with groove welds, weld tabs  
 2025 and weld backing shall be removed, except that weld backing located on

2026 the inside of flanges and weld backing on the web of I-shaped sections  
 2027 need not be removed if backing is attached to the column base plate with  
 2028 a continuous  $\frac{5}{16}$ -in. fillet weld. Fillet welds of backing to the inside of  
 2029 column flanges are prohibited. Weld backing located on the inside of  
 2030 HSS and box columns need not be removed.

2031 The available strength of concrete elements and reinforcing steel at the  
 2032 column base shall be in accordance with ACI 318. When the design of  
 2033 anchor rods assumes that the ductility demand is provided for by  
 2034 deformations in the anchor rods and anchorage into reinforced concrete,  
 2035 the design shall meet the requirements of ACI 318 Chapter 17.  
 2036 Alternatively, when the ductility demand is provided for elsewhere, the  
 2037 anchor rods and anchorage into reinforced concrete are permitted to be  
 2038 designed for the maximum loads resulting from the deformations  
 2039 occurring elsewhere including the effects of material overstrength and  
 2040 strain hardening.

2041 **User Note:** When using concrete reinforcing steel as part of the  
 2042 anchorage embedment design, it is important to consider the anchor  
 2043 failure modes and provide reinforcement that is developed on both sides  
 2044 of the expected failure surface. See ACI 318 Chapter 17, including  
 2045 Commentary.

#### 2046 **D2.6a. Required Axial Strength**

2047 The required axial strength of column bases that are designated as part of  
 2048 the SFRS, including their attachment to the foundation, shall be the  
 2049 summation of the vertical components of the required connection  
 2050 strengths of the steel elements that are connected to the column base, but  
 2051 not less than the greater of:

- 2052 (a) The column axial load calculated using the overstrength seismic  
 2053 load
- 2054 (b) The required axial strength for column splices, as prescribed in  
 2055 Section D2.5

2056 **User Note:** The vertical components can include both the axial load  
 2057 from columns and the vertical component of the axial load from diagonal  
 2058 members framing into the column base. Section D2.5 includes references  
 2059 to Section D1.4a and Chapters E, F, G and H. Where diagonal braces  
 2060 frame to both sides of a column, the effects of compression brace  
 2061 buckling should be considered in the summation of vertical components.  
 2062 See Section F2.3.

#### 2063 **D2.6b. Required Shear Strength**

2064 The required shear strength of column bases, including those not  
 2065 designated as part of the SFRS, and their attachments to the foundations,  
 2066 shall be the summation of the horizontal component of the required

connection strengths of the steel elements that are connected to the column base as follows:

- (a) For diagonal braces, the horizontal component shall be determined from the required strength of diagonal brace connections for the SFRS.
- (b) For columns, the horizontal component shall be equal to the lesser of the following:
  - (1)  $2R_y F_y Z / (\alpha_s H)$  of the column
  - (2) The shear calculated using the overstrength seismic load.
- (c) The summation of the required strengths of the horizontal components shall not be less than  $0.7 F_y Z / (\alpha_s H)$  of the column.

Exceptions:

- (a) Single story columns with simple connections at both ends need not comply with Section D2.6b(b) or D2.6b(c).
- (b) Columns that are part of the systems defined in Sections E1, F1, G1, H1, H4 or combinations thereof need not comply with D2.6b(c).
- (c) The minimum required shear strength per Section D2.6b(c) need not exceed the maximum load effect that can be transferred from the column to the foundation as determined by either a nonlinear analysis per Section C3, or an analysis that includes the effects of inelastic behavior resulting in 0.025H story drift at either the first or second story, but not both concurrently.

**User Note:** The horizontal components can include the shear load from columns and the horizontal component of the axial load from diagonal members framing into the column base. Horizontal forces for columns that are not part of the SFRS determined in accordance with this section typically will not govern over those determined according to Section D2.6b(c)..

### D2.6c. Required Flexural Strength

Where column bases are designed as moment connections to the foundation, the required flexural strength of column bases that are designated as part of the SFRS, including their attachment to the foundation, shall be the summation of the required connection strengths of the steel elements that are connected to the column base as follows:

- (a) For diagonal braces, the required flexural strength shall be at least equal to the required flexural strength of diagonal brace connections.

2105 (b) For columns, the required flexural strength shall be at least equal  
2106 to the lesser of the following:

2107 (1)  $1.1R_y F_y Z / \alpha_s$  of the column, or

2108 (2) the moment calculated using the overstrength seismic  
2109 load, provided that a ductile limit state in either the  
2110 column base or the foundation controls the design.

2111 **User Note:** Moments at column to column base connections designed as  
2112 simple connections may be ignored.

## 2113 D2.7. Composite Connections

2114 This section applies to connections in buildings that utilize composite  
2115 steel and concrete systems wherein seismic load is transferred between  
2116 structural steel and reinforced concrete components. Methods for  
2117 calculating the connection strength shall satisfy the requirements in this  
2118 section. Unless the connection strength is determined by analysis or  
2119 testing, the models used for design of connections shall satisfy the  
2120 following requirements:

2121 (a) Force shall be transferred between structural steel and  
2122 reinforced concrete through:

2123 (1) direct bearing from internal bearing mechanisms;

2124 (2) shear connection;

2125 (3) shear friction with the necessary clamping force  
2126 provided by reinforcement normal to the plane of shear  
2127 transfer; or

2128 (4) a combination of these means.

2129 The contribution of different mechanisms is permitted to be  
2130 combined only if the stiffness and deformation capacity of the  
2131 mechanisms are compatible. Any potential bond strength  
2132 between structural steel and reinforced concrete shall be ignored  
2133 for the purpose of the connection force transfer mechanism.

2134 (b) The nominal bearing and shear-friction strengths shall meet the  
2135 requirements of ACI 318 Chapter 16. Unless a higher strength is  
2136 substantiated by cyclic testing, the nominal bearing and shear-  
2137 friction strengths shall be reduced by 25% for the composite  
2138 seismic systems described in Sections G3, H2, H3, H5 and H6.

- 2139 (c) Face bearing plates consisting of stiffeners between the flanges of  
 2140 steel beams shall be provided when beams are embedded in  
 2141 reinforced concrete columns or walls.
- 2142 (d) The nominal shear strength of concrete-encased steel panel zones  
 2143 in beam-to-column connections shall be calculated as the sum of  
 2144 the nominal strengths of the structural steel and confined  
 2145 reinforced concrete shear elements as determined in Section  
 2146 E3.6e and ACI 318 Section 18.8, respectively.
- 2147 (e) Reinforcement shall be provided to resist all tensile forces in  
 2148 reinforced concrete components of the connections. Additionally,  
 2149 the concrete shall be confined with transverse reinforcement. All  
 2150 reinforcement shall be fully developed in tension or compression,  
 2151 as applicable, beyond the point at which it is no longer required to  
 2152 resist the forces. Development lengths shall be determined in  
 2153 accordance with ACI 318 Chapter 25. Additionally, development  
 2154 lengths for the systems described in Sections G3, H2, H3, H5 and  
 2155 H6 shall satisfy the requirements of ACI 318 Section 18.8.5
- 2156 (f) Composite connections shall satisfy the following additional  
 2157 requirements:
- 2158 (1) When the slab transfers horizontal diaphragm forces, the  
 2159 slab reinforcement shall be designed and anchored to  
 2160 carry the in-plane tensile forces at all critical sections in  
 2161 the slab, including connections to collector beams,  
 2162 columns, diagonal braces and walls.
- 2163 (2) For connections between structural steel or composite  
 2164 beams and reinforced concrete or encased composite  
 2165 columns, transverse hoop reinforcement shall be provided  
 2166 in the connection region of the column to satisfy the  
 2167 requirements of ACI 318 Section 18.8, except for the  
 2168 following modifications:
- 2169 (i) Structural steel sections framing into the  
 2170 connections are considered to provide  
 2171 confinement over a width equal to that of face  
 2172 bearing plates welded to the beams between the  
 2173 flanges.
- 2174 (ii) Lap splices are permitted for perimeter ties when  
 2175 confinement of the splice is provided by face  
 2176 bearing plates or other means that prevents  
 2177 spalling of the concrete cover in the systems  
 2178 described in Sections G1, G2, H1 and H4.
- 2179 (iii) The longitudinal bar sizes and layout in reinforced

2180 concrete and composite columns shall be detailed  
 2181 to minimize slippage of the bars through the  
 2182 beam-to-column connection due to high force  
 2183 transfer associated with the change in column  
 2184 moments over the height of the connection.

2185 **User Note:** The commentary provides guidance for determining panel  
 2186 zone shear strength.

## 2187 **D2.8. Steel Anchors**

2188 Where steel headed stud anchors or welded reinforcing bar anchors are  
 2189 part of the intermediate or special SFRS of Sections G2, G3, G4, H2, H3,  
 2190 H5 and H6, their shear and tensile strength shall be reduced by 25%  
 2191 from the specified strengths given in Specification Chapter I. The  
 2192 diameter of steel headed stud anchors shall be limited to 3/4 in. (19 mm).  
 2193

2194 **User Note:** The 25% reduction is not necessary for gravity and collector  
 2195 components in structures with intermediate or special seismic force-  
 2196 resisting systems designed for the overstrength seismic load.

## 2197 **D3. DEFORMATION COMPATIBILITY OF NON-SFRS MEMBERS** 2198 **AND CONNECTIONS**

2199 Where deformation compatibility of members and connections that are  
 2200 not part of the seismic force-resisting system (SFRS) is required by the  
 2201 applicable building code, these elements shall be designed to resist the  
 2202 combination of gravity load effects and the effects of deformations  
 2203 occurring at the design story drift calculated in accordance with the  
 2204 applicable building code.

2205 **User Note:** ASCE/SEI 7 stipulates the above requirement for both  
 2206 structural steel and composite members and connections. Flexible shear  
 2207 connections that allow member end rotations in accordance with  
 2208 Specification Section J1.2 should be considered to satisfy these  
 2209 requirements. Inelastic deformations are permitted in connections or  
 2210 members provided they are self-limiting and do not create instability in  
 2211 the member. See the Commentary for further discussion.

## 2212 **D4. H-PILES**

### 2213 **D4.1. Design Requirements**

2214 Design of H-piles shall comply with the requirements of the Specification  
 2215 regarding design of members subjected to combined loads. H-piles  
 2216 located in site classes E or F as defined by ASCE/SEI 7 shall satisfy the  
 2217 requirements for moderately ductile members of Section D1.1.

2218 **D4.2. Battered H-Piles**

2219 If battered (sloped) and vertical piles are used in a pile group, the vertical  
2220 piles shall be designed to support the combined effects of the dead and  
2221 live loads without the participation of the battered piles.

2222 **D4.3. Tension**

2223 Tension in each pile shall be transferred to the pile cap by mechanical  
2224 means such as shear keys, reinforcing bars, or studs welded to the  
2225 embedded portion of the pile.

2226 **D4.4. Protected Zone**

2227  
2228 At each pile, the length equal to the depth of the pile cross section located  
2229 directly below the bottom of the pile cap shall be designated as a  
2230 protected zone meeting the requirements of Sections D1.3 and I2.1.  
2231

2300

**CHAPTER E**

2301

**MOMENT-FRAME SYSTEMS**

2302

This chapter provides the basis of design, the requirements for analysis, and the requirements for the system, members and connections for steel moment-frame systems.

2303

The chapter is organized as follows:

2304

2305

E1. Ordinary Moment Frames (OMF)

2306

E2. Intermediate Moment Frames (IMF)

2307

E3. Special Moment Frames (SMF)

2308

E4. Special Truss Moment Frames (STMF)

2309

E5. Ordinary Cantilever Column Systems (OCCS)

2310

E6. Special Cantilever Column Systems (SCCS)

2311

**User Note:** The requirements of this chapter are in addition to those required by the Specification and the applicable building code.

2312

2313

**E1. ORDINARY MOMENT FRAMES (OMF)**

2314

**E1.1. Scope**

2315

Ordinary moment frames (OMF) of structural steel shall be designed in conformance with this section.

2316

2317

**E1.2. Basis of Design**

2318

OMF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide minimal inelastic deformation capacity in their members and connections.

2319

2320

**E1.3. Analysis**

2321

There are no requirements specific to this system.

2322

**E1.4. System Requirements**

2323

There are no requirements specific to this system.

2324

**E1.5. Members**

2325

**E1.5a. Basic Requirements**

2326

There are no limitations on width-to-thickness ratios of members for OMF beyond those in the Specification. There are no requirements for stability bracing of beams or joints in OMF, beyond those in the Specification. Structural steel beams in OMF are permitted to be composite with a reinforced concrete slab to resist gravity loads.

2327

2328

2329

2330

2331

**E1.5b. Protected Zones**

2332

There are no designated protected zones for OMF members.

2333 **E1.6. Connections**

2334 Beam-to-column connections are permitted to be fully restrained (FR) or partially  
2335 restrained (PR) moment connections in accordance with this section.

2336 **E1.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

2337 Complete-joint-penetration (CJP) groove welds of beam flanges to columns are  
2338 demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements of Sections A3.4b and  
2339 I2.3.

2340 **E1.6b. FR Moment Connections**

2341 FR moment connections that are part of the seismic force-resisting system (SFRS)  
2342 shall satisfy at least one of the following requirements:

2343 (a) FR moment connections shall be designed for a required flexural strength that  
2344 is equal to the expected beam flexural strength,  $R_y M_p$ , multiplied by 1.1 and  
2345 divided by  $\alpha_s$ , where  $\alpha_s$  = LRFD-ASD force level adjustment factor = 1.0 for  
2346 LRFD and 1.5 for ASD.

2347 The required shear strength of the connection,  $V_u$  or  $V_a$ , as applicable, shall be  
2348 determined using the capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-  
2349 limited horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be taken as:

$$2350 \quad E_{cl} = 2(1.1R_y M_p) / L_{cf} \quad (E1-1)$$

2351 where

2352  $L_{cf}$  = clear length of beam, in. (mm)

2353  $M_p$  =  $F_y Z$ , kip-in. (N-mm)

2354  $R_y$  = ratio of expected yield stress to the specified minimum yield stress,  
2355  $F_y$

2356  
2357 (b) FR moment connections shall be designed for a required flexural strength and  
2358 a required shear strength equal to the maximum moment and corresponding  
2359 shear that can be transferred to the connection by the system, including the  
2360 effects of material overstrength and strain hardening.

2361  
2362 **User Note:** Factors that may limit the maximum moment and corresponding  
2363 shear that can be transferred to the connection include column yielding, panel  
2364 zone yielding, the development of the flexural strength of the beam at some  
2365 distance away from the connection when web tapered members are used, and  
2366 others. Further discussion is provided in the commentary.

2367 For options (a) and (b) in Section E1.6b, continuity plates shall be provided as  
2368 required by Sections J10.1, J10.2 and J10.3 of the Specification. The bending  
2369 moment used to check for continuity plates shall be the same bending moment

used to design the beam-to-column connection; in other words,  $1.1R_yM_n/\alpha_s$  or the maximum moment that can be transferred to the connection by the system.

(c) FR moment connections between wide-flange beams and the flange of wide-flange columns shall either satisfy the requirements of Section E2.6 or E3.6, or shall satisfy the following requirements:

(1) All welds at the beam-to-column connection shall satisfy the requirements of Chapter 3 of ANSI/AISC 358.

(2) Beam flanges shall be connected to column flanges using complete-joint-penetration groove welds.

(3) The shape of weld access holes shall be in accordance with clause 6.10.1.2 of AWS D1.8/D1.8M. Weld access hole quality requirements shall be in accordance with clause 6.10.2 of AWS D1.8/D1.8M.

(4) Continuity plates shall satisfy the requirements of Section E3.6f.

Exception: The welded joints of the continuity plates to the column flanges are permitted to be complete-joint-penetration groove welds, two-sided partial-joint-penetration groove welds with contouring fillets, two-sided fillet welds, or combinations of partial-joint-penetration groove welds and fillet welds. The required strength of these joints shall not be less than the available strength of the contact area of the plate with the column flange.

(5) The beam web shall be connected to the column flange using either a CJP groove weld extending between weld access holes, or using a bolted single plate shear connection designed for the required shear strength given in Section E1.6b(a).

**User Note:** For FR moment connections, panel zone shear strength should be checked in accordance with Specification Section J10.6. The required shear strength of the panel zone should be based on the beam end moments computed from the load combinations stipulated by the applicable building code, not including the overstrength seismic load.

#### **E1.6c. PR Moment Connections**

PR moment connections shall satisfy the following requirements:

(a) Connections shall be designed for the maximum moment and shear from the applicable load combinations as described in Sections B2 and B3.

(b) The stiffness, strength and deformation capacity of PR moment connections shall be considered in the design, including the effect on overall frame stability.

(c) The nominal flexural strength of the connection,  $M_{n,PR}$ , shall be no less than 50% of  $M_p$  of the connected beam.

2411 Exception: For one-story structures,  $M_{n,PR}$  shall be no less than 50% of  $M_p$  of  
 2412 the connected column.

2413 (d)  $V_u$  or  $V_a$ , as applicable, shall be determined per Section E1.6b(a) with  $M_p$  in  
 2414 Equation E1-1 taken as  $M_{n,PR}$ .

## 2415 **E2. INTERMEDIATE MOMENT FRAMES (IMF)**

### 2416 **E2.1. Scope**

2417 Intermediate moment frames (IMF) of structural steel shall be designed in  
 2418 conformance with this section.

### 2419 **E2.2. Basis of Design**

2420 IMF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide limited  
 2421 inelastic deformation capacity through flexural yielding of the IMF beams and  
 2422 columns, and shear yielding of the column panel zones. Design of connections of  
 2423 beams to columns, including panel zones and continuity plates, shall be based on  
 2424 connection tests that provide the performance required by Section E2.6b, and  
 2425 demonstrate this conformance as required by Section E2.6c.

### 2426 **E2.3. Analysis**

2427 There are no requirements specific to this system.

### 2428 **E2.4. System Requirements**

#### 2429 **E2.4a. Stability Bracing of Beams**

2431 Beams shall be braced to satisfy the requirements for moderately ductile members  
 2432 in Section D1.2a.

2433 In addition, unless otherwise indicated by testing, beam braces shall be placed  
 2434 near concentrated forces, changes in cross section, and other locations where  
 2435 analysis indicates that a plastic hinge will form during inelastic deformations of  
 2436 the IMF. The placement of stability bracing shall be consistent with that  
 2437 documented for a prequalified connection designated in ANSI/AISC 358, or as  
 2438 otherwise determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section  
 2439 K1, or in a program of qualification testing in accordance with Section K2.

2440 The required strength of lateral bracing provided adjacent to plastic hinges shall  
 2441 be as required by Section D1.2c.

2442 **E2.5. Members**

2443 **E2.5a. Basic Requirements**

2444 Beam and column members shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1 for  
2445 moderately ductile members, unless otherwise qualified by tests.

2446 Structural steel beams in IMF are permitted to be composite with a reinforced  
2447 concrete slab to resist gravity loads.

2448 **E2.5b. Beam Flanges**

2449 Changes in beam flange area in the protected zones, as defined in Section E2.5c,  
2450 shall be gradual. The drilling of flange holes or trimming of beam flange width is  
2451 not permitted unless testing or qualification demonstrates that the resulting  
2452 configuration is able to develop stable plastic hinges to accommodate the  
2453 required story drift angle. The configuration shall be consistent with a  
2454 prequalified connection designated in ANSI/AISC 358, or as otherwise  
2455 determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or in  
2456 a program of qualification testing in accordance with Section K2.

2457 **E2.5c. Protected Zones**

2458 The region at each end of the beam subject to inelastic straining shall be  
2459 designated as a protected zone, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.3.  
2460 The extent of the protected zone shall be as designated in ANSI/AISC 358, or as  
2461 otherwise determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section  
2462 K1, or as determined in a program of qualification testing in accordance with  
2463 Section K2.

2464 **User Note:** The plastic hinging zones at the ends of IMF beams should be treated  
2465 as protected zones. The plastic hinging zones should be established as part of a  
2466 prequalification or qualification program for the connection, in accordance with  
2467 Section E2.6c. In general, for unreinforced connections, the protected zone will  
2468 extend from the face of the column to one half of the beam depth beyond the  
2469 plastic hinge point.

2470 **E2.6. Connections**

2471 **E2.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

2472 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements  
2473 of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- 2474 (a) Groove welds at column splices
- 2475 (b) Welds at column-to-base plate connections

2476  
2477

2478 Exception: Welds need not be considered demand critical when both of the  
2479 following conditions are satisfied:

2480 (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is precluded by conditions of  
2481 restraint, and

2482 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations including the overstrength  
2483 seismic load.

2484 (c) Complete-joint-penetration groove welds of beam flanges and beam webs to  
2485 columns, unless otherwise designated by ANSI/AISC 358, or otherwise  
2486 determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or  
2487 as determined in a program of qualification testing in accordance with Section  
2488 K2.

2489 **User Note:** For the designation of demand critical welds, standards such as  
2490 ANSI/AISC 358 and tests addressing specific connections and joints should be  
2491 used in lieu of the more general terms of these Provisions. Where these  
2492 Provisions indicate that a particular weld is designated demand critical, but the  
2493 more specific standard or test does not make such a designation, the more specific  
2494 standard or test should govern. Likewise, these standards and tests may designate  
2495 welds as demand critical that are not identified as such by these Provisions.

#### 2496 **E2.6b. Beam-to-Column Connection Requirements**

2497 Beam-to-column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy the following  
2498 requirements:

2499 (a) The connection shall be capable of accommodating a story drift angle of at  
2500 least 0.02 rad.

2501 (b) The measured flexural resistance of the connection, determined at the column  
2502 face, shall equal at least  $0.80M_p$  of the connected beam at a story drift angle of  
2503 0.02 rad.

#### 2504 **E2.6c. Conformance Demonstration**

2505 Beam-to-column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy the requirements of  
2506 Section E2.6b by one of the following:

2507 (a) Use of IMF connections designed in accordance with ANSI/AISC 358.

2508 (b) Use of a connection prequalified for IMF in accordance with Section K1.

2509 (c) Provision of qualifying cyclic test results in accordance with Section K2.  
2510 Results of at least two cyclic connection tests shall be provided and are  
2511 permitted to be based on one of the following:

2512 (1) Tests reported in the research literature or documented tests performed for  
2513 other projects that represent the project conditions, within the limits  
2514 specified in Section K2.

- 2515 (2) Tests that are conducted specifically for the project and are representative  
 2516 of project member sizes, material strengths, connection configurations,  
 2517 and matching connection processes, within the limits specified in Section  
 2518 K2.

#### 2519 **E2.6d. Required Shear Strength**

2520 The required shear strength of the connection shall be determined using the  
 2521 capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited horizontal seismic load  
 2522 effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be taken as:

$$2523 \quad E_{cl} = 2[1.1R_y M_p] / L_h \quad (E2-1)$$

2524 where

- 2525  $L_h$  = distance between beam plastic hinge locations as defined within the  
 2526 test report or ANSI/AISC 358, in. (mm)  
 2527  $M_p$  =  $F_y Z$  = plastic flexural strength, kip-in. (N-mm)  
 2528  $R_y$  = ratio of the expected yield stress to the specified  
 2529 minimum yield stress,  $F_y$   
 2530

2531 Exception: In lieu of Equation E2-1, the required shear strength of the connection  
 2532 shall be as specified in ANSI/AISC 358, or as otherwise determined in a  
 2533 connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or in a program of  
 2534 qualification testing in accordance with Section K2.

#### 2535 **E2.6e. Panel Zone**

2536 There are no additional panel zone requirements.

2537 **User Note:** Panel zone shear strength should be checked in accordance with  
 2538 Section J10.6 of the Specification. The required shear strength of the panel zone  
 2539 should be based on the beam end moments computed from the load combinations  
 2540 stipulated by the applicable building code, not including the overstrength seismic  
 2541 load.

#### 2542 **E2.6f. Continuity Plates**

2543 Continuity plates shall be provided in accordance with the provisions of Section  
 2544 E3.6f.

#### 2545 **E2.6g. Column Splices**

2546 Column splices shall comply with the requirements of Section E3.6g.

2547 **E3. SPECIAL MOMENT FRAMES (SMF)**

2548 **E3.1. Scope**

2549 Special moment frames (SMF) of structural steel shall be designed in  
2550 conformance with this section.

2551 **E3.2. Basis of Design**

2552 SMF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide  
2553 significant inelastic deformation capacity through flexural yielding of the SMF  
2554 beams and limited yielding of column panel zones, or, where equivalent  
2555 performance of the moment frame system is demonstrated by substantiating  
2556 analysis and testing, through yielding of the connections of beams to columns.  
2557 Except where otherwise permitted in this section, columns shall be designed to be  
2558 stronger than the fully yielded and strain-hardened beams or girders. Flexural  
2559 yielding of columns at the base is permitted. Design of connections of beams to  
2560 columns, including panel zones and continuity plates, shall be based on  
2561 connection tests that provide the performance required by Section E3.6b, and  
2562 demonstrate this conformance as required by Section E3.6c.

2563 **E3.3. Analysis**

2564 For special moment frame systems that consist of isolated planar frames, there are  
2565 no additional analysis requirements.

2566 For moment frame systems that include columns that form part of two intersecting  
2567 special moment frames in orthogonal or multi-axial directions, the column  
2568 analysis of Section E3.4a shall consider the potential for beam yielding in both  
2569 orthogonal directions simultaneously.

2570 **User Note:** For these columns, the required axial loads are defined in Section  
2571 D1.4a(b).

2572 **E3.4. System Requirements**

2573 **E3.4a. Moment Ratio**

2574 The following relationship shall be satisfied at beam-to-column connections:

$$2575 \frac{\Sigma M_{pc}^*}{\Sigma M_{pb}^*} > 1.0 \quad (E3-1)$$

2576 where

2577  $\Sigma M_{pc}^*$  = sum of the projections of the nominal flexural strengths of the  
2578 columns (including haunches where used) above and below the  
2579 joint to the beam centerline with a reduction for the axial force in  
2580 the column, kip-in. (N-mm). It is permitted to determine  $\Sigma M_{pc}^*$  as  
2581 follows:

$$= \Sigma Z_c (F_{yc} - \alpha_s P_r / A_g) \quad (E3-2)$$

When the centerlines of opposing beams in the same joint do not coincide, the mid-line between centerlines shall be used.

$\Sigma M_{pb}^*$  = sum of the projections of the expected flexural strengths of the beams at the plastic hinge locations to the column centerline, kip-in. (N-mm). It is permitted to determine  $\Sigma M_{pb}^*$  as follows:

$$= \Sigma (M_{pr} + \alpha_s M_v) \quad (E3-3)$$

$M_{pr}$  = probable maximum moment at the location of the plastic hinge, as determined in accordance with ANSI/AISC 358, or as otherwise determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or in a program of qualification testing in accordance with Section K2, kip-in. (N-mm)

$A_g$  = gross area of column, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

$F_{yb}$  = specified minimum yield stress of beam, ksi (MPa)

$F_{yc}$  = specified minimum yield stress of column, ksi (MPa)

$M_v$  = additional moment due to shear amplification from the location of the plastic hinge to the column centerline based on LRFD or ASD load combinations, kip-in. (N-mm)

$Z_c$  = plastic section modulus of the column about the axis of bending, in.<sup>3</sup> (mm<sup>3</sup>)

$P_r$  = required compressive strength according to Section D1.4a, kips (N)

Exception: The requirement of Equation E3-1 shall not apply if the following conditions in (a) or (b) are satisfied.

(a) Columns with  $P_{rc} < 0.3P_c$  for all load combinations other than those determined using the overstrength seismic load and that satisfy either of the following:

(1) Columns used in a one-story building or the top story of a multistory building.

(2) Columns where: (1) the sum of the available shear strengths of all exempted columns in the story is less than 20% of the sum of the available shear strengths of all moment frame columns in the story acting in the same direction; and (2) the sum of the available shear strengths of all exempted columns on each moment frame column line within that story is less than 33% of the available shear strength of all moment frame columns on that column line. For the purpose of this exception, a column line is defined as a single line of columns or parallel lines of columns located within 10% of the plan dimension perpendicular to the line of columns.

**User Note:** For purposes of this exception, the available shear strengths of the columns should be calculated as the limit strengths considering the flexural strength at each end as limited by the flexural strength of the attached beams, or the flexural strength of the columns themselves, divided by H, where H is the story height.

The nominal compressive strength,  $P_c$ , shall be

$$P_c = F_{yc} A_g / \alpha_s \quad (E3-5)$$

and  $P_{rc} = P_{uc}$  (LRFD) or  $P_{rc} = P_{ac}$  (ASD), as applicable.

- (b) Columns in any story that has a ratio of available shear strength to required shear strength that is 50% greater than the story above.

#### **E3.4b. Stability Bracing of Beams**

Beams shall be braced to satisfy the requirements for highly ductile members in Section D1.2b.

In addition, unless otherwise indicated by testing, beam braces shall be placed near concentrated forces, changes in cross section, and other locations where analysis indicates that a plastic hinge will form during inelastic deformations of the SMF. The placement of lateral bracing shall be consistent with that documented for a prequalified connection designated in ANSI/AISC 358, or as otherwise determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or in a program of qualification testing in accordance with Section K2.

The required strength and stiffness of stability bracing provided adjacent to plastic hinges shall be as required by Section D1.2c.

#### **E3.4c. Stability Bracing at Beam-to-Column Connections**

##### **1. Braced Connections**

When the webs of the beams and column are coplanar, and a column is shown to remain elastic outside of the panel zone, column flanges at beam-to-column connections shall require stability bracing only at the level of the top flanges of the beams. It is permitted to assume that the column remains elastic when the ratio calculated using Equation E3-1 is greater than 2.0.

When a column cannot be shown to remain elastic outside of the panel zone, the following requirements shall apply:

- (a) The column flanges shall be laterally braced at the levels of both the top and bottom beam flanges. Stability bracing is permitted to be either direct or indirect.

**User Note:** Direct stability bracing of the column flange is achieved through use of member braces or other members, deck and slab, attached to the column flange at or near the desired bracing point to resist lateral buckling. Indirect stability bracing refers to bracing that is achieved through the stiffness of members and connections that are not directly attached to the column flanges, but rather act through the column web or stiffener plates.

- (b) Each column-flange member brace shall be designed for a required strength that is equal to 2% of the available beam flange strength divided by  $\alpha_s$ ,  $F_y b_f t_{bf} / \alpha_s$ .

## 2. Unbraced Connections

A column containing a beam-to-column connection with no member bracing transverse to the seismic frame at the connection shall be designed using the distance between adjacent member braces as the column height for buckling transverse to the seismic frame and shall conform to Specification Chapter H, except that:

- (a) The required column strength shall be determined from the load combinations in the applicable building code that include the overstrength seismic load.

The overstrength seismic load,  $E_{mh}$ , need not exceed 125% of the frame available strength based upon either the beam available flexural strength or panel zone available shear strength.

- (b) The slenderness  $L/r$  for the column shall not exceed 60

where

$L$  = length of column, in. (mm)

$r$  = governing radius of gyration, in. (mm)

- (c) The column required flexural strength transverse to the seismic frame shall include that moment caused by the application of the beam flange force specified in Section E3.4c(1)(b) in addition to the second-order moment due to the resulting column flange lateral displacement.

## E3.5. Members

### E3.5a. Basic Requirements

Beam and column members shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for highly ductile members, unless otherwise qualified by tests.

Structural steel beams in SMF are permitted to be composite with a reinforced concrete slab to resist gravity loads.

2693 **E3.5b. Beam Flanges**

2694 Abrupt changes in beam flange area are prohibited in plastic hinge regions. The  
 2695 drilling of flange holes or trimming of beam flange width are not permitted unless  
 2696 testing or qualification demonstrates that the resulting configuration can develop  
 2697 stable plastic hinges to accommodate the required story drift angle. The  
 2698 configuration shall be consistent with a prequalified connection designated in  
 2699 ANSI/AISC 358, or as otherwise determined in a connection prequalification in  
 2700 accordance with Section K1, or in a program of qualification testing in  
 2701 accordance with Section K2.  
 2702

2703 **E3.5c. Protected Zones**

2704 The region at each end of the beam subject to inelastic straining shall be  
 2705 designated as a protected zone, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.3.  
 2706 The extent of the protected zone shall be as designated in ANSI/AISC 358, or as  
 2707 otherwise determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section  
 2708 K1, or as determined in a program of qualification testing in accordance with  
 2709 Section K2.  
 2710

2711 **User Note:** The plastic hinging zones at the ends of SMF beams should be  
 2712 treated as protected zones. The plastic hinging zones should be established as part  
 2713 of a prequalification or qualification program for the connection, per Section  
 2714 E3.6c. In general, for unreinforced connections, the protected zone will extend  
 2715 from the face of the column to one half of the beam depth beyond the plastic  
 2716 hinge point.

2717 **E3.6. Connections**

2718 **E3.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

2719 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements  
 2720 of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- 2721 (a) Groove welds at column splices
- 2722 (b) Welds at column-to-base plate connections

2723 Exception: Welds need not be considered demand critical when both of the  
 2724 following conditions are satisfied:

- 2725 (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is precluded by conditions of  
 2726 restraint, and
- 2727 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations including the overstrength  
 2728 seismic load.

2729

- 2730 (c) Complete-joint-penetration groove welds of beam flanges and beam webs to  
 2731 columns, unless otherwise designated by ANSI/AISC 358, or otherwise  
 2732 determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1, or  
 2733 as determined in a program of qualification testing in accordance with Section  
 2734 K2.

2735 **User Note:** For the designation of demand critical welds, standards such as  
 2736 ANSI/AISC 358 and tests addressing specific connections and joints should be  
 2737 used in lieu of the more general terms of these Provisions. Where these Provisions  
 2738 indicate that a particular weld is designated demand critical, but the more specific  
 2739 standard or test does not make such a designation, the more specific standard or  
 2740 test consistent with the requirements in Chapter K should govern. Likewise, these  
 2741 standards and tests may designate welds as demand critical that are not identified  
 2742 as such by these Provisions.

#### 2743 **E3.6b. Beam-to-Column Connections**

2744 Beam-to-column connections used in the seismic force-resisting system (SFRS)  
 2745 shall satisfy the following requirements:

- 2746 (a) The connection shall be capable of accommodating a story drift angle of at  
 2747 least 0.04 rad.  
 2748 (b) The measured flexural resistance of the connection, determined at the column  
 2749 face, shall equal at least  $0.80M_p$  of the connected beam at a story drift angle of  
 2750 0.04 rad, unless equivalent performance of the moment frame system is  
 2751 demonstrated through substantiating analysis conforming to SEI/ASCE 7  
 2752 Sections 12.2.1.1 or 12.2.1.2.

#### 2753 **E3.6c. Conformance Demonstration**

2754 Beam-to-column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy the requirements of  
 2755 Section E3.6b by one of the following:

- 2756 (a) Use of SMF connections designed in accordance with ANSI/AISC 358.  
 2757 (b) Use of a connection prequalified for SMF in accordance with Section K1.  
 2758 (c) Provision of qualifying cyclic test results in accordance with Section K2.  
 2759 Results of at least two cyclic connection tests shall be provided and shall be  
 2760 based on one of the following:  
 2761 (1) Tests reported in the research literature or documented tests performed for  
 2762 other projects that represent the project conditions, within the limits  
 2763 specified in Section K2  
 2764 (2) Tests that are conducted specifically for the project and are representative  
 2765 of project member sizes, material strengths, connection configurations,  
 2766 and matching connection processes, within the limits specified in Section  
 2767 K2

2768 **E3.6d. Required Shear Strength**

2769 The required shear strength of the connection shall be determined using the  
 2770 capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited horizontal seismic load  
 2771 effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be taken as:

$$2772 \quad E_{cl} = 2M_{pr}/L_h \quad (E3-6)$$

2773 where

2774  $L_h$  = distance between plastic hinge locations as defined within the test  
 2775 report or ANSI/AISC 358, in. (mm)

2776  $M_{pr}$  = maximum probable moment at the plastic hinge location, as defined in  
 2777 Section E3.4a, kip-in. (N-mm)

2778  
 2779 When  $E_{cl}$  as defined in Equation E3-6 is used in ASD load combinations that are  
 2780 additive with other transient loads and that are based on ASCE/SEI 7, the 0.75  
 2781 combination factor for transient loads shall not be applied to  $E_{cl}$ .

2782 Where the exceptions to Equation E3-1 in Section E3.4a apply, the shear,  $E_{cl}$ , is  
 2783 permitted to be calculated based on the beam end moments corresponding to the  
 2784 expected flexural strength of the column multiplied by 1.1.

2785 **E3.6e. Panel Zone**

2786 **1. Required Shear Strength**

2787 The required shear strength of the panel zone shall be determined from the  
 2788 summation of the moments at the column faces as determined by projecting  
 2789 the expected moments at the plastic hinge points to the column faces. The  
 2790 design shear strength shall be  $\phi_v R_n$  and the allowable shear strength shall be  
 2791  $R_n/\Omega_v$ , where

$$2792 \quad \phi_v = 1.00 \text{ (LRFD)} \quad \Omega_v = 1.50 \text{ (ASD)}$$

2793 and the nominal shear strength,  $R_n$ , in accordance with the limit state of shear  
 2794 yielding, is determined as specified in Specification Section J10.6.

2795 Alternatively, the required thickness of the panel zone shall be determined in  
 2796 accordance with the method used in proportioning the panel zone of the tested  
 2797 or prequalified connection.

2798 Where the exceptions to Equation E3-1 in Section E3.4a apply, the beam  
 2799 moments used in calculating the required shear strength of the panel zone  
 2800 need not exceed those corresponding to the expected flexural strength of the  
 2801 column multiplied by 1.1.

2802

**2. Panel Zone Thickness**

2803

2804

The individual thicknesses,  $t$ , of column web and doubler plates, if used, shall conform to the following requirement:

2805

$$t \geq (d_z + w_z) / 90 \quad (\text{E3-7})$$

2806

where

2807

$d_z = d - 2t_f$  of the deeper beam at the connection, in. (mm)

2808

$t =$  thickness of column web or **individual** doubler plate, in. (mm)

2809

$w_z =$  width of panel zone between column flanges, in. (mm)

2810

2811

2812

2813

2814

2815

2816

2817

2818

2819

2820

**3. Panel Zone Doubler Plates**

The thickness of doubler plates, if used, shall not be less than 0.25 in. (6 mm).

2821

When used, doubler plates shall meet the following requirements.

2822

2823

2824

2825

2826

2827

2828

2829

2830

2831

2832

2833

2834

2835

2836

2837

2838

Where the required strength of the panel zone exceeds the design strength, or where the panel zone does not comply with Equation E3-7, doubler plates shall be provided. Doubler plates shall be placed in contact with the web, or shall be spaced away from the web. Doubler plates with a gap of up to 1/16 in. (2 mm) between the doubler plate and the column web are permitted to be designed as being in contact with the web. When doubler plates are spaced away from the web, they shall be placed symmetrically in pairs on opposite sides of the column web.

Doubler plates in contact with the web shall be welded to the column flanges either using partial-joint-penetration groove welds in accordance with AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 4 that extend from the surface of the doubler plate to the column flange, or by using fillet welds. Spaced doubler plates shall be welded to the column flanges using complete-joint-penetration groove welds, partial-joint-penetration groove welds, or fillet welds. The required strength of partial-joint-penetration groove welds or fillet welds shall equal the available shear yielding strength of the doubler plate thickness.

2839

**(a) Doubler plates used without continuity plates**

2840

2841

2842

Doubler plates and the welds connecting the doubler plates to the column flanges shall extend at least 6 in. (150 mm) above and below the top and bottom of the deeper moment frame beam. For doubler plates in contact

ment [LCA1]: Editorial clarification  
ponse to previous comment.

with the web, if the doubler plate thickness alone and the column web thickness alone both satisfy Equation E3-7, then no weld is required along the top and bottom edges of the doubler plate. If either the doubler plate thickness alone or the column web thickness alone does not satisfy Equation E3-7, then a minimum size fillet weld, as stipulated in Specification Table J2.4, shall be provided along the top and bottom edges of the doubler plate. These welds shall terminate 1.5 in. (75 mm) from the toe of the column fillet.

(b) Doubler plates used with continuity plates

Doubler plates are permitted to be either extended above and below the continuity plates or placed between the continuity plates.

(1) Extended doubler plates

Extended doubler plates shall be in contact with the web. Extended doubler plates and the welds connecting the doubler plates to the column flanges shall extend at least 6 in. (150 mm) above and below the top and bottom of the deeper moment frame beam. Continuity plates shall be welded to the extended doubler plates in accordance with the requirements in Section E3.6f.2(c). No welds are required at the top and bottom edges of the doubler plate.

(2) Doubler plates placed between continuity plates

Doubler plates placed between continuity plates are permitted to be in contact with the web or away from the web. Welds between the doubler plate and the column flanges shall extend between continuity plates, but are permitted to stop no more than 1 in. (25 mm) from the continuity plate. The top and bottom of the doubler plate shall be welded to the continuity plates over the full length of the continuity plates in contact with the column web. The required strength of the doubler plate to continuity plate weld shall equal 75% of the available shear yield strength of the full doubler plate thickness over the contact length with the continuity plate.

**User Note:** When a beam perpendicular to the column web connects to a doubler plate, the doubler plate should be sized based on the shear from the beam end reaction in addition to the panel zone shear. When welding continuity plates to extended doubler plates, force transfer between the continuity plate and doubler plate must be considered. See commentary for further discussion.

**E3.6f. Continuity Plates**

Continuity plates shall be provided as required by this section.

Exception: This section shall not apply in the following cases:

- (a) Where continuity plates are otherwise determined in a connection prequalification in accordance with Section K1.
- (b) Where a connection is qualified in accordance with Section K2 for conditions in which the test assembly omits continuity plates and matches the prototype beam and column sizes and beam span.

# 1. Conditions Requiring Continuity Plates

Continuity plates shall be provided in the following cases:

- (a) Where the required strength at the column face exceeds the available column strength determined using the applicable local limit states stipulated in Specification Section J10, where applicable. Where so required, continuity plates shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Section J10.8 and the requirements of Section E3.6f.2.

For connections in which the beam flange is welded to the column flange, the column shall have an available strength sufficient to resist an applied force consistent with the probable maximum moment at face of column,  $M_f$ .

**User Note:** The beam flange force,  $P_f$ , corresponding to the probable maximum moment at the column face,  $M_f$ , may be determined as follows:

For connections with beam webs with a bolted connection to the column,  $P_f$  is permitted to be determined assuming only the beam

flanges participate in transferring the moment  $M_f$ :  $P_f = \frac{M_f}{\alpha_s d^*}$

For connections with beam webs welded to the column,  $P_f$  is permitted to be determined assuming that the beam flanges and web participate proportionally in transferring the moment  $M_f$ :

$$P_f = \frac{0.85M_f}{\alpha_s d^*}$$

where

$M_f$  = probable maximum moment at face of column as defined in ANSI/AISC 358 for a prequalified moment connection or as determined from qualification testing, kip-in. (N-mm)

$P_f$  = required strength at the column face for local limit states in the column, kip (N)

$d^*$  = distance between centroids of beam flanges or beam flange connections to the face of the column, in. (mm)

- (b) Where the column flange thickness is less than the limiting thickness,  $t_{lim}$ , determined in accordance with this provision.

- (1) Where the beam flange is welded to the flange of a wide-flange or built-up I-shaped column, the limiting column-flange thickness is

$$t_{lim} = \frac{b_{bf}}{6} \quad (E3-8)$$

- (2) Where the beam flange is welded to the flange of the I-shape in a boxed wide-flange column, the limiting column-flange thickness is:

$$t_{lim} = \frac{b_{bf}}{12} \quad (E3-9)$$

**User Note:** These continuity plate requirements apply only to wide-flange column sections. Detailed formulas for determining continuity plate requirements for box column shapes have not been developed. It is noted that the performance of moment connections is dependent on the column flange stiffness in distributing the strain across the beam-to-column flange weld. Designers should consider the relative stiffness of the box column flange compared to those of tested assemblies in resisting the beam flange force to determine the need for continuity plates.

## 2. Continuity Plate Requirements

Where continuity plates are required, they shall meet the requirements of this section.

- (a) Continuity Plate Width

The width of the continuity plate shall be determined as follows:

- (1) For W-shape columns, continuity plates shall, at a minimum, extend from the column web to a point opposite the tips of the wider beam flanges.
- (2) For boxed wide flange columns, continuity plates shall extend the full width from column web to side plate of the column.

- (b) Continuity Plate Thickness

2957 The minimum thickness of the plates shall be determined as  
2958 follows:

- 2959 (1) For one-sided connections, the continuity plate thickness  
2960 shall be at least 50% of the thickness of the beam flange.
- 2961 (2) For two-sided connections, the continuity plate thickness  
2962 shall be at least equal to 75% of the thickness of the thicker  
2963 beam flange on either side of the column.

2964 (c) Continuity Plate Welding

2965 Continuity plates shall be welded to column flanges using CJP  
2966 groove welds.

2967 Continuity plates shall be welded to column webs or extended  
2968 doubler plates using groove welds or fillet welds. The required  
2969 strength of the welded joints of continuity plates to the column  
2970 web or extended doubler plate shall be the lesser of the following:

- 2971 (1) The sum of the available strengths in tension of the contact  
2972 areas of the continuity plates to the column flanges that  
2973 have attached beam flanges
- 2974 (2) The available strength in shear of the contact area of the  
2975 plate with the column web or extended doubler plate
- 2976 (3) The available strength in shear of the column web, when  
2977 the continuity plate is welded to the column web, or the  
2978 available strength in shear of the doubler plate, when the  
2979 continuity plate is welded to an extended doubler plate  
2980

2981 **E3.6g. Column Splices**

2982 Column splices shall comply with the requirements of Section D2.5.

2983  
2984 Exception: The required strength of the column splice including appropriate stress  
2985 concentration factors or fracture mechanics stress intensity factors need not  
2986 exceed that determined by a nonlinear analysis as specified in Chapter C.

2987 **1. Welded column flange splices using complete-joint-penetration groove**  
2988 **welds**

2989 Where welds are used to make the flange splices, they shall be complete-  
2990 joint-penetration groove welds, unless otherwise permitted in Section  
2991 E3.6g.2.

2992  
2993 **2. Welded column flange splices using partial-joint-penetration groove**  
2994 **welds**

2995  
2996  
2997  
2998  
2999

Where the specified minimum yield stress of the column shafts does not exceed 60 ksi (415 MPa) and the thicker flange is at least 5% thicker than the thinner flange, partial-joint-penetration groove welds are permitted to make the flange splices, and shall comply with the following requirements:

3000  
3001  
3002

(a) The partial-joint-penetration flange weld or welds shall provide a minimum total effective throat of 85% of the thickness of the thinner column flange.

3003  
3004  
3005  
3006  
3007  
3008  
3009

(b) A smooth transition in the thickness of the weld is provided from the outside of the thinner flange to the outside of the thicker flange. The transition shall be at a slope not greater than 1 in 2.5, and may be accomplished by sloping the weld surface, by chamfering the thicker flange to a thickness no less than 5% greater than the thickness of the thinner flange, or by a combination of these two methods.

3010  
3011

(c) Tapered transitions between column flanges of different width shall be provided in accordance with Section D2.5b(c).

3012  
3013

(d) Where the flange weld is a double-bevel groove weld (i.e., on both sides of the flange):

3014  
3015

(i) The unfused root face shall be centered within the middle half of the thinner flange, and

3016  
3017  
3018

(ii) Weld access holes that comply with the AISC Specification shall be provided in the column section containing the groove weld preparation.

3019  
3020  
3021

(e) Where the flange thickness of the thinner flange is not greater than 2.5 in. (64 mm), and the weld is a single-bevel groove weld, weld access holes shall not be required.

3022  
3023

### 3. **Welded column web splices using complete-joint-penetration groove welds**

3024  
3025  
3026  
3027

The web weld or welds shall be made in a groove or grooves in the column web that extend to the access holes. The weld end(s) may be stepped back from the ends of the bevel(s) using a block sequence for approximately one weld size.

3028  
3029

### 4. **Welded column web splices using partial-joint-penetration groove welds**

3030  
3031  
3032  
3033  
3034

When partial-joint-penetration groove welds in column flanges that comply with Section E3.6g.2 are used, and the thicker web is at least 5% thicker than the thinner web, it shall be permitted to use partial-joint-penetration groove welds in column webs, and shall comply with the following requirements:

- 3035 (a) The partial-joint-penetration web weld or welds shall provide a  
 3036 minimum total effective throat of 85% of the thickness of the  
 3037 thinner column web.
- 3038 (b) A smooth transition in the thickness of the weld shall be provided  
 3039 from the outside of the thinner web to the outside of the thicker  
 3040 web.
- 3041 (c) Where the weld is a single-bevel groove, the thickness of the  
 3042 thinner web shall not be greater than 2.5 in. (64 mm).
- 3043 (d) Where no access hole is provided, the web weld or welds shall be  
 3044 made in a groove or grooves prepared in the column web  
 3045 extending the full length of the web between the k-areas. The weld  
 3046 end(s) are permitted to be stepped back from the ends of the  
 3047 bevel(s) using a block sequence for approximately one weld size.
- 3048 (e) Where an access hole is provided, the web weld or welds shall be  
 3049 made in a groove or grooves in the column web that extend to the  
 3050 access holes. The weld end(s) are permitted to be stepped back  
 3051 from the ends of the bevel(s) using a block sequence for  
 3052 approximately one weld size.

#### 3053 5. Bolted column splices

3054 Bolted column splices shall have a required flexural strength that is at least  
 3055 equal to  $R_y F_y Z_x / \alpha_s$  of the smaller column, where  $Z_x$  is the plastic section  
 3056 modulus about the x-axis. The required shear strength of column web  
 3057 splices shall be at least equal to  $\Sigma M_{pc} / (\alpha_s H_c)$ , where  $\Sigma M_{pc}$  is the sum of the  
 3058 plastic flexural strengths at the top and bottom ends of the column.

### 3059 E4. SPECIAL TRUSS MOMENT FRAMES (STMF)

#### 3060 E4.1. Scope

3061 Special truss moment frames (STMF) of structural steel shall satisfy the  
 3062 requirements in this Section.

#### 3063 E4.2. Basis of Design

3064 STMF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide  
 3065 significant inelastic deformation capacity within a special segment of the truss.  
 3066 STMF shall be limited to span lengths between columns not to exceed 65 ft (20  
 3067 m) and overall depth not to exceed 6 ft (1.8 m). The columns and truss segments  
 3068 outside of the special segments shall be designed to remain essentially elastic  
 3069 under the forces that are generated by the fully yielded and strain-hardened  
 3070 special segment.

#### 3071 E4.3. Analysis

3072 Analysis of STMF shall satisfy the following requirements.

3073 **E4.3a. Special Segment**

3074 The required vertical shear strength of the special segment shall be calculated for  
3075 the applicable load combinations in the applicable building code.

3076 **E4.3b. Nonspecial Segment**

3077 The required strength of nonspecial segment members and connections, including  
3078 column members, shall be determined using the capacity-limited horizontal  
3079 seismic load effect. The capacity-limited horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall  
3080 be taken as the lateral forces necessary to develop the expected vertical shear  
3081 strength of the special segment acting at mid-length and defined in Section E4.5c.  
3082 Second order effects at maximum design drift shall be included.

3083 **E4.4. System Requirements**

3084 **E4.4a. Special Segment**

3085 Each horizontal truss that is part of the SFRS shall have a special segment that is  
3086 located between the quarter points of the span of the truss. The length of the  
3087 special segment shall be between 0.1 and 0.5 times the truss span length. The  
3088 length-to-depth ratio of any panel in the special segment shall neither exceed 1.5  
3089 nor be less than 0.67.

3090 Panels within a special segment shall either be all Vierendeel panels or all X-  
3091 braced panels; neither a combination thereof nor the use of other truss diagonal  
3092 configurations is permitted. Where diagonal members are used in the special  
3093 segment, they shall be arranged in an X pattern separated by vertical members.  
3094 Diagonal members within the special segment shall be made of rolled flat bars of  
3095 identical sections. Such diagonal members shall be interconnected at points  
3096 where they cross. The interconnection shall have a required strength equal to 0.25  
3097 times the nominal tensile strength of the diagonal member. Bolted connections  
3098 shall not be used for diagonal members within the special segment.

3099 Splicing of chord members is not permitted within the special segment, nor within  
3100 one-half the panel length from the ends of the special segment.

3101 The required axial strength of the diagonal web members in the special segment  
3102 due to dead and live loads within the special segment shall not exceed  
3103  $0.03F_yA_g/\alpha_s$ .

3104 **E4.4b. Stability Bracing of Trusses**

3105 Each flange of the chord members shall be laterally braced at the ends of the  
3106 special segment. The required strength of the lateral brace shall be

3107 
$$P_r = 0.06R_yF_yA_f / \alpha_s \quad (E4-1)$$

3108

3109

where

3110

3111

$A_f$  = gross area of the flange of the special segment chord member, in.<sup>2</sup>  
(mm<sup>2</sup>)

3112

**E4.4c. Stability Bracing of Truss-to-Column Connections**

3113

3114

3115

The columns shall be laterally braced at the levels of top and bottom chords of the trusses connected to the columns. The lateral braces shall have a required strength of

3116

$$P_r = 0.02R_y P_{nc} / \alpha_s \quad (E4-2)$$

3117

where

3118

3119

$P_{nc}$  = nominal compressive strength of the chord member at the ends, kips  
(N)

3120

**E4.4d. Stiffness of Stability Bracing**

3121

3122

The required brace stiffness shall meet the provisions of Specification Appendix 6, Section 6.2, where

3123

$$P_r = R_y P_{nc} / \alpha_s \quad (E4-2)$$

3124

where

3125

$P_r$  = required axial compressive strength, kips (N)

3126

3127

**E4.5. Members**

3128

3129

**E4.5a. Basic Requirements**

3130

3131

3132

3133

Columns shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for highly ductile members.

3134

**E4.5b. Special Segment Members**

3135

3136

3137

3138

3139

3140

3141

3142

The available shear strength of the special segment shall be calculated as the sum of the available shear strength of the chord members through flexure, and of the shear strength corresponding to the available tensile strength and 0.3 times the available compressive strength of the diagonal members, when they are used. The top and bottom chord members in the special segment shall be made of identical sections and shall provide at least 25% of the required vertical shear strength.

The available strength,  $\phi P_n$  (LRFD) and  $P_n/\Omega$  (ASD), determined in accordance with the limit state of tensile yielding, shall be equal to or greater than 2.2 times the required strength, where

$$\phi = 0.90 \text{ (LRFD)} \quad \Omega = 1.67 \text{ (ASD)}$$

$$P_n = F_y A_g \quad (\text{E4-4})$$

#### E4.5c. Expected Vertical Shear Strength of Special Segment

The expected vertical shear strength of the special segment,  $V_{ne}$ , at mid-length, shall be:

$$V_{ne} = \frac{3.60 R_y M_{nc}}{L_s} + 0.036 EI \frac{L}{L_s^3} + R_y (P_{nt} + 0.3 P_{nc}) \sin \alpha \quad (\text{E4-5})$$

where

$E$  = modulus of elasticity of a chord member of the special segment, ksi (MPa)

$I$  = moment of inertia of a chord member of the special segment, in.<sup>4</sup> (mm<sup>4</sup>)

$L$  = span length of the truss, in. (mm)

$L_s$  = length of the special segment, in. (mm)

$M_{nc}$  = nominal flexural strength of a chord member of the special segment, kip-in. (N-mm)

$P_{nt}$  = nominal tensile strength of a diagonal member of the special segment, kips (N)

$P_{nc}$  = nominal compressive strength of a diagonal member of the special segment, kips (N)

$R_y$  = ratio of the expected yield stress to the specified minimum yield stress

$\alpha$  = angle of diagonal members with the horizontal, degrees

#### E4.5d. Width-to-Thickness Limitations

Chord members and diagonal web members within the special segment shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1b for highly ductile members. The width-to-thickness ratio of flat bar diagonal members shall not exceed 2.5.

#### E4.5e. Built-Up Chord Members

Spacing of stitching for built-up chord members in the special segment shall not exceed  $0.04 E_r / F_y$ , where  $r_y$  is the radius of gyration of individual components about their weak axis.

3180 **E4.5f. Protected Zones**

3181 The region at each end of a chord member within the special segment shall be  
 3182 designated as a protected zone meeting the requirements of Section D1.3. The  
 3183 protected zone shall extend over a length equal to two times the depth of the  
 3184 chord member from the connection with the web members. Vertical and diagonal  
 3185 web members from end-to-end of the special segments shall be protected zones.  
 3186

3187 **E4.6. Connections**

3188 **E4.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

3189 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements  
 3190 of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

3191 (a) Groove welds at column splices

3192 (b) Welds at column-to-base plate connections

3193 Exception: Welds need not be considered demand critical when both of the  
 3194 following conditions are satisfied:

3195 (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is precluded by conditions of  
 3196 restraint, and

3197 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations including the overstrength  
 3198 seismic load.

3199 **E4.6b. Connections of Diagonal Web Members in the Special Segment**  
 3200

3201 The end connection of diagonal web members in the special segment shall have a  
 3202 required strength that is at least equal to the expected yield strength of the web  
 3203 member, determined as  $R_y F_y A_g / \alpha_s$ .  
 3204

3205 **E4.6c. Column Splices**

3206 Column splices shall comply with the requirements of Section E3.6g.  
 3207

3208 **E5. ORDINARY CANTILEVER COLUMN SYSTEMS (OCCS)**

3209 **E5.1. Scope**

3210 Ordinary cantilever column systems (OCCS) of structural steel shall be designed  
 3211 in conformance with this section.  
 3212

3213 **E5.2. Basis of Design**

3214 OCCS designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide  
3215 minimal inelastic drift capacity through flexural yielding of the columns.  
3216

3217 **E5.3. Analysis**

3218 There are no requirements specific to this system.  
3219

3220 **E5.4. System Requirements**

3221 **E5.4a. Columns**

3222 Columns shall be designed using the load combinations including the overstrength  
3223 seismic load. The required axial strength,  $P_{rc}$ , shall not exceed 15% of the  
3224 available axial strength,  $P_c$ , for these load combinations only.  
3225

3226 **E5.4b. Stability Bracing of Columns**

3227 There are no additional stability bracing requirements for columns.  
3228

3229 **E5.5. Members**

3230 **E5.5a. Basic Requirements**

3231 There are no additional requirements.  
3232

3233 **E5.5b. Column Flanges**

3234 There are no additional column flange requirements.  
3235

3236 **E5.5c. Protected Zones**

3237 There are no designated protected zones.  
3238

3239 **E5.6. Connections**

3240

3241 **E5.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

3242 No demand critical welds are required for this system.  
3243

3244 **E5.6b. Column Bases**

3245 Column bases shall be designed in accordance with Section D2.6.  
3246

3247 **E6. SPECIAL CANTILEVER COLUMN SYSTEMS (SCCS)**  
3248

3249 **E6.1. Scope**

3250 Special cantilever column systems (SCCS) of structural steel shall be designed in  
3251 conformance with this section.

3252  
3253 **E6.2. Basis of Design**

3254 SCCS designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide  
3255 limited inelastic drift capacity through flexural yielding of the columns.

3256  
3257 **E6.3. Analysis**

3258 There are no requirements specific to this system.

3259  
3260 **E6.4. System Requirements**

3261 **E6.4a. Columns**

3262 Columns shall be designed using the load combinations including the overstrength  
3263 seismic load. The required strength,  $P_{rc}$ , shall not exceed 15% of the available  
3264 axial strength,  $P_c$ , for these load combinations only.

3265  
3266 **E6.4b. Stability Bracing of Columns**

3267 Columns shall be braced to satisfy the requirements applicable to beams classified  
3268 as moderately ductile members in Section D1.2a.

3269  
3270 **E6.5. Members**

3271 **E6.5a. Basic Requirements**

3272 Column members shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for highly ductile  
3273 members.

3274  
3275 **E6.5b. Column Flanges**

3276 Abrupt changes in column flange area are prohibited in the protected zone as  
3277 designated in Section E6.5c.

3278  
3279 **E6.5c. Protected Zones**

3280 The region at the base of the column subject to inelastic straining shall be  
3281 designated as a protected zone, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.3.  
3282 The length of the protected zone shall be two times the column depth.

3283  
3284 **E6.6. Connections**

3285 **E6.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

3286

3287 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements  
3288 of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

3289

3290 (a) Groove welds at column splices

3291 (b) Welds at column-to-base plate connections

3292

3293 **E6.6b. Column Bases**

3294 Column bases shall be designed in accordance with Section D2.6.

DRAFT

## 3400 CHAPTER F

### 3401 BRACED FRAME AND SHEAR WALL SYSTEMS

3402 This chapter provides the basis of design, the requirements for analysis, and the requirements for the  
3403 system, members and connections for steel braced-frame and shear-wall systems.

3404 The chapter is organized as follows:

- 3405
- 3406 F1. Ordinary Centrically Braced Frames (OCBF)
  - 3407 F2. Special Centrically Braced Frames (SCBF)
  - 3408 F3. Eccentrically Braced Frames (EBF)
  - 3409 F4. Buckling-Restrained Braced Frames (BRBF)
  - 3410 F5. Special Plate Shear Walls (SPSW)

3411 **User Note:** The requirements of this chapter are in addition to those required by the Specification  
3412 and the applicable building code.

#### 3413 F1. ORDINARY CONCENTRICALLY BRACED FRAMES (OCBF)

##### 3414 F1.1. Scope

3415 Ordinary concentrically braced frames (OCBF) of structural steel shall be designed in  
3416 conformance with this section.

##### 3417 F1.2. Basis of Design

3418 This section is applicable to braced frames that consist of concentrically connected members.  
3419 Eccentricities less than the beam depth are permitted if they are accounted for in the member  
3420 design by determination of eccentric moments using the overstrength seismic load.

3421 OCBF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide limited inelastic  
3422 deformation capacity in their members and connections.

##### 3423 F1.3. Analysis

3424 There are no additional analysis requirements.

##### 3425 F1.4. System Requirements

##### 3426 F1.4a. V-Braced and Inverted V-Braced Frames

3427 Beams in V-type and inverted V-type OCBF shall be continuous at brace connections away  
3428 from the beam-column connection and shall satisfy the following requirements:

- 3429 (a) The required strength of the beam shall be determined assuming that the braces  
3430 provide no support of dead and live loads. For load combinations that include  
3431 earthquake effects, the seismic load effect,  $E$ , on the beam shall be determined as  
3432 follows:

(1) The forces in braces in tension shall be assumed to be the least of the following:

(i) The load effect based upon the overstrength seismic load

(ii) The maximum force that can be developed by the system

(2) The forces in braces in compression shall be assumed to be equal to  $0.3P_n$

(b) As a minimum, one set of lateral braces is required at the point of intersection of the braces, unless the member has sufficient out-of-plane strength and stiffness to ensure stability between adjacent brace points.

#### **F1.4b.K-Braced Frames**

K-type braced frames shall not be used for OCBF.

#### **F1.4c. Multi-tiered Braced Frames**

An ordinary concentrically braced frame is permitted to be configured as a multi-tiered braced frame (MT-OCBF) when the following requirements are satisfied.

(a) Braces shall be used in opposing pairs at every tier level.

(b) Braced frames shall be configured with in-plane struts at each tier level.

(c) Columns shall be torsionally braced at every strut-to-column connection location.

**User Note:** The requirements for torsional bracing are typically satisfied by connecting the strut to the column to restrain torsional movement of the column. The strut must have adequate flexural strength and stiffness and an appropriate connection to the column to perform this function.

(d) The required strength of brace connections shall be determined from the load combinations of the applicable building code, including the overstrength seismic load, with the horizontal seismic load effect,  $E$ , multiplied by a factor of 1.5.

(e) The required axial strength of the struts shall be determined from the load combinations of the applicable building code, including the overstrength seismic load, with the horizontal seismic load effect,  $E$ , multiplied by a factor of 1.5. In tension-compression X-bracing, these forces shall be determined in the absence of compression braces.

(f) The required axial strengths of the columns shall be determined from the load combinations of the applicable building code, including the overstrength seismic load, with the horizontal seismic load effect,  $E$ , multiplied by a factor of 1.5.

(g) For all load combinations, columns subjected to axial compression shall be designed to resist bending moments due to second-order and geometric imperfection effects. As a minimum, imperfection effects are permitted to be represented by an out-of-plane horizontal notional load applied at every tier level and equal to 0.006 times the vertical load contributed by the compression brace connecting the column at the tier level.

(h) When tension-only bracing is used, requirements (d), (e) and (f) need not be satisfied if:

(1) All braces have a controlling slenderness ratio of 200 or more.

(2) The braced frame columns are designed to resist additional in-plane bending moments due to the unbalanced lateral forces determined at every tier level using the capacity-limited seismic load based on expected brace strengths. The expected brace strength in tension is  $R_y F_y A_g$ , where

$F_y$  = specified minimum yield stress, ksi (MPa)

$R_y$  = ratio of the expected yield stress to the specified minimum yield stress,  $F_y$

The unbalanced lateral force at any tier level shall not be less than 5% of the larger horizontal brace component resisted by the braces below and above the tier level.

## **F1.5. Members**

### **F1.5a. Basic Requirements**

Braces shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for moderately ductile members.

Exception: Braces in tension-only frames with slenderness ratios greater than 200 need not comply with this requirement.

### **F1.5b. Slenderness**

Braces in V or inverted-V configurations shall have  $\frac{L_c}{r} \leq 4\sqrt{E/F_y}$

where

$E$  = modulus of elasticity of steel, ksi (MPa)

$L_c$  = effective length of brace =  $KL$ , in. (mm)

$K$  = effective length factor

$r$  = governing radius of gyration, in. (mm)

### **F1.5c. Beams**

The required strength of beams and their connections shall be determined using the overstrength seismic load.

## **F1.6. Connections**

### **F1.6a. Brace Connections**

The required strength of diagonal brace connections shall be determined using the overstrength seismic load.

Exception: The required strength of the brace connection need not exceed the following:

- (a) In tension, the expected yield strength divided by  $\alpha_s$ , which shall be determined as  $R_y F_y A_g / \alpha_s$  where  $\alpha_s$  = LRFD-ASD force level adjustment factor = 1.0 for LRFD and 1.5 for ASD.
- (b) In compression, the expected brace strength in compression divided by  $\alpha_s$ , which is permitted to be taken as the lesser of  $R_y F_y A_g / \alpha_s$  and  $1.1 F_{cre} A_g / \alpha_s$ , where  $F_{cre}$  is determined from Specification Chapter E using the equations for  $F_{cr}$ , except that the expected yield stress  $R_y F_y$  is used in lieu of  $F_y$ . The brace length used for the determination of  $F_{cre}$  shall not exceed the distance from brace end to brace end.
- (c) When oversized holes are used, the required strength for the limit state of bolt slip need not exceed the seismic load effect based upon the load combinations without overstrength as stipulated by the applicable building code.

### **F1.7. Ordinary Concentrically Braced Frames above Seismic Isolation Systems**

OCBF above the isolation system shall satisfy the requirements of this section and of Section F1 except for Section F1.4a.

#### **F1.7a. System Requirements**

Beams in V-type and inverted V-type braced frames shall be continuous between columns.

#### **F1.7b. Members**

Braces shall have a slenderness ratio,  $L_c / r \leq 4\sqrt{E/F_y}$ .

## **F2. SPECIAL CONCENTRICALLY BRACED FRAMES (SCBF)**

### **F2.1. Scope**

Special concentrically braced frames (SCBF) of structural steel shall be designed in conformance with this section. Collector beams that connect SCBF braces shall be considered to be part of the SCBF.

### **F2.2. Basis of Design**

This section is applicable to braced frames that consist of concentrically connected members. Eccentricities less than the beam depth are permitted if the resulting member and connection forces are addressed in the design and do not change the expected source of inelastic deformation capacity.

SCBF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide significant

inelastic deformation capacity primarily through brace buckling and yielding of the brace in tension.

### F2.3. Analysis

The required strength of columns, beams, struts and connections in SCBF shall be determined using the capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be taken as the larger force determined from the following analyses:

- (a) An analysis in which all braces are assumed to resist forces corresponding to their expected strength in compression or in tension
- (b) An analysis in which all braces in tension are assumed to resist forces corresponding to their expected strength and all braces in compression are assumed to resist their expected post-buckling strength
- (c) For multi-tiered braced frames, analyses representing progressive yielding and buckling of the braces from weakest tier to strongest. Analyses shall consider both directions of frame loading.

Braces shall be determined to be in compression or tension neglecting the effects of gravity loads. Analyses shall consider both directions of frame loading.

The expected brace strength in tension is  $R_y F_y A_g$ , where  $A_g$  is the gross area, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>).

The expected brace strength in compression is permitted to be taken as the lesser of  $R_y F_y A_g$  and  $(1/0.877)F_{cre}A_g$  where  $F_{cre}$  is determined from Specification Chapter E using the equations for  $F_{cr}$ , except that the expected yield stress  $R_y F_y$  is used in lieu of  $F_y$ . The brace length used for the determination of  $F_{cre}$  shall not exceed the distance from brace end to brace end.

The expected post-buckling brace strength shall be taken as a maximum of 0.3 times the expected brace strength in compression.

**User Note:** Braces with a slenderness ratio of 200 (the maximum permitted by Section F2.5b) buckle elastically for permissible materials; the value of  $0.3F_{cr}$  for such braces is 2.1 ksi. This value may be used in Section F2.3(b) for braces of any slenderness and a liberal estimate of the required strength of framing members will be obtained.

Exceptions:

- (a) It is permitted to neglect flexural forces resulting from seismic drift in this determination.
- (b) The required strength of columns need not exceed the least of the following:
  - (1) The forces corresponding to the resistance of the foundation to overturning uplift

(2) Forces as determined from nonlinear analysis as defined in Section C3.

(c) The required strength of bracing connections shall be as specified in Section F2.6c.

**User Note:** Exception (c) is only relevant for ASD.

## **F2.4. System Requirements**

### **F2.4a. Lateral Force Distribution**

Along any line of braces, braces shall be deployed in alternate directions such that, for either direction of force parallel to the braces, at least 30% but no more than 70% of the total horizontal force along that line is resisted by braces in tension, unless the available strength of each brace in compression is larger than the required strength resulting from the overstrength seismic load. For the purposes of this provision, a line of braces is defined as a single line or parallel lines with a plan offset of 10% or less of the building dimension perpendicular to the line of braces.

Where opposing diagonal braces along a frame line do not occur in the same bay, the required strengths of the diaphragm, collectors, and elements of the horizontal framing system shall be determined such that the forces resulting from the post-buckling behavior using the analysis requirements of Section F2.3 can be transferred between the braced bays. The required strength of the collector need not exceed the required strength determined by the load combinations of the applicable building code, including the overstrength seismic load, applied to a building model in which all compression braces have been removed. The required strengths of the collectors shall not be based on a load less than that stipulated by the applicable building code.

### **F2.4b. V- and Inverted V-Braced Frames**

Beams that are intersected by braces away from beam-to-column connections shall satisfy the following requirements:

- (a) Beams shall be continuous between columns.
- (b) Beams shall be braced to satisfy the requirements for moderately ductile members in Section D1.2a.

As a minimum, one set of lateral braces is required at the point of intersection of the V-type (or inverted V-type) braced frames, unless the beam has sufficient out-of-plane strength and stiffness to ensure stability between adjacent brace points.

**User Note:** One method of demonstrating sufficient out-of-plane strength and stiffness of the beam is to apply the bracing force defined in Equation A-6-7 of Appendix 6 of the Specification to each flange so as to form a torsional couple; this loading should be in conjunction with the flexural forces determined from the analysis required by Section F2.3. The stiffness of the beam (and its restraints) with respect to this torsional loading should be sufficient to satisfy Equation A-6-8 of the Specification.

**F2.4c. K-Braced Frames**

K-type braced frames shall not be used for SCBF.

**F2.4d. Tension-Only Frames**

Tension-only frames shall not be used in SCBF.

**User Note:** Tension-only braced frames are those in which the brace compression resistance is neglected in the design and the braces are designed for tension forces only.

**F2.4e. Multi-tiered Braced Frames**

A special concentrically braced frame is permitted to be configured as a multi-tiered braced frame (MT-SCBF) when the following requirements are satisfied.

- (a) Braces shall be used in opposing pairs at every tier level.
- (b) Struts shall satisfy the following requirements:
  - (1) Horizontal struts shall be provided at every tier level.
  - (2) Struts that are intersected by braces away from strut-to-column connections shall also meet the requirements of Section F2.4b. When brace buckling occurs out-of-plane, torsional moments arising from brace buckling shall be considered when verifying lateral bracing or minimum out-of-plane strength and stiffness requirements. The torsional moments shall correspond to  $1.1R_y M_p / \alpha_s$  of the brace about the critical buckling axis, but need not exceed forces corresponding to the flexural resistance of the brace connection, where  $M_p$  is the nominal plastic flexural strength, kip-in. (N-mm).
- (c) Columns shall satisfy the following requirements:
  - (1) Columns shall be torsionally braced at every strut-to-column connection location. **User Note:** The requirements for torsional bracing are typically satisfied by connecting the strut to the column to restrain torsional movement of the column. The strut must have adequate flexural strength and stiffness and an appropriate connection to the column to perform this function.
  - (2) Columns shall have sufficient strength to resist forces arising from brace buckling. These forces shall correspond to  $1.1R_y M_p / \alpha_s$  of the brace about the critical buckling axis, but need not exceed forces corresponding to the flexural resistance of the brace connections.
  - (3) For all load combinations, columns subjected to axial compression shall be designed to resist bending moments due to second-order and geometric imperfection effects. As a minimum, imperfection effects are permitted to be represented by an out-of-plane horizontal notional load applied at every tier level and equal to 0.006 times the vertical load contributed by the

compression brace intersecting the column at the tier level. In all cases, the multiplier  $B_1$  as defined in Appendix 8 of the Specification need not exceed 2.0.

- (d) Each tier in a multi-tiered braced frame shall be subject to the drift limitations of the applicable building code, but the drift shall not exceed 2% of the tier height.

## **F2.5. Members**

### **F2.5a. Basic Requirements**

Columns, beams, and braces shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for highly ductile members. Struts in SCBF-MTBF shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for moderately ductile members.

### **F2.5b. Diagonal Braces**

Braces shall comply with the following requirements:

- (a) Slenderness: Braces shall have a slenderness ratio,  $L_c/r \leq 200$ .
- (b) Built-up Braces: The spacing of connectors shall be such that the slenderness ratio,  $a/r_i$ , of individual elements between the connectors does not exceed 0.4 times the governing slenderness ratio of the built-up member.

The sum of the available shear strengths of the connectors shall equal or exceed the available tensile strength of each element. The spacing of connectors shall be uniform. Not less than two connectors shall be used in a built-up member. Connectors shall not be located within the middle one-fourth of the clear brace length.

Exception: Where the buckling of braces about their critical buckling axis does not cause shear in the connectors, the design of connectors need not comply with this provision.

- (c) The brace effective net area shall not be less than the brace gross area. Where reinforcement on braces is used the following requirements shall apply:
- (1) The specified minimum yield strength of the reinforcement shall be at least the specified minimum yield strength of the brace.
  - (2) The connections of the reinforcement to the brace shall have sufficient strength to develop the expected reinforcement strength on each side of a reduced section.

### **F2.5c. Protected Zones**

The protected zone of SCBF shall satisfy Section D1.3 and include the following:

- (a) For braces, the center one-quarter of the brace length and a zone adjacent to each connection equal to the brace depth in the plane of buckling

- (b) Elements that connect braces to beams and columns

## **F2.6. Connections**

### **F2.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- (a) Groove welds at column splices

- (b) Welds at column-to-base plate connections

Exception: Welds need not be considered demand critical when both of the following conditions are satisfied:

- (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is precluded by conditions of restraint, and

- (2) There is no net tension under load combinations including the overstrength seismic load.

- (c) Welds at beam-to-column connections conforming to Section F2.6b(c)

### **F2.6b. Beam-to-Column Connections**

Where a brace or gusset plate connects to both members at a beam-to-column connection, the connection shall conform to one of the following:

- (a) The connection assembly shall be a simple connection meeting the requirements of Specification Section B3.4a where the required rotation is taken to be 0.025 rad; or

- (b) The connection assembly shall be designed to resist a moment equal to the lesser of the following:

- (1) A moment corresponding to the expected beam flexural strength,  $R_y M_p$ , multiplied by 1.1 and divided by  $\alpha_s$ .

- (2) A moment corresponding to the sum of the expected column flexural strengths,  $\Sigma(R_y F_y Z)$ , multiplied by 1.1 and divided by  $\alpha_s$ .

This moment shall be considered in combination with the required strength of the brace connection and beam connection, including the diaphragm collector forces determined using the overstrength seismic load.

- (c) The beam-to-column connection shall meet the requirements of Section E1.6b(c).

**F2.6c. Brace Connections**

The required strength in tension, compression and flexure of brace connections (including beam-to-column connections if part of the braced-frame system) shall be determined as required below. These required strengths are permitted to be considered independently without interaction.

**1. Required Tensile Strength**

The required tensile strength is the lesser of the following:

- (a) The expected yield strength in tension, of the brace, determined as  $R_y F_y A_g$ , divided by  $\alpha_s$ .

Exception:

Braces need not comply with the requirements of Equation J4-1 and J4-2 of the Specification for this loading.

**User Note:** This exception applies to braces where the section is reduced or where the net section is effectively reduced due to shear lag. A typical case is a slotted HSS brace at the gusset plate connection. Section F2.5b requires braces with holes or slots to be reinforced such that the effective net area exceeds the gross area.

The brace strength used to check connection limit states, such as brace block shear, may be determined using expected material properties as permitted by Section A3.2.

- (b) The maximum load effect, indicated by analysis, that can be transferred to the brace by the system.

When oversized holes are used, the required strength for the limit state of bolt slip need not exceed the seismic load effect determined using the overstrength seismic loads

**User Note:** For other limit states the loadings of (a) and (b) apply.

**2. Required Compressive Strength**

Brace connections shall be designed for a required compressive strength, based on buckling limit states, that is equal to the expected brace strength in compression divided by  $\alpha_s$ , where the expected brace strength in compression is as defined in Section F2.3.

**3. Accommodation of Brace Buckling**

Brace connections shall be designed to withstand the flexural forces or rotations imposed by brace buckling. Connections satisfying either of the following provisions are deemed to satisfy this requirement:

- (a) Required Flexural Strength: Brace connections designed to withstand the flexural forces imposed by brace buckling shall have a required flexural strength equal to the expected brace flexural strength multiplied by 1.1 and divided by  $\alpha_s$ . The expected brace flexural strength shall be determined as  $R_y M_p$  of the brace about the critical buckling axis.
- (b) Rotation Capacity: Brace connections designed to withstand the rotations imposed by brace buckling shall have sufficient rotation capacity to accommodate the required rotation at the design story drift. Inelastic rotation of the connection is permitted.

**User Note:** Accommodation of inelastic rotation is typically accomplished by means of a single gusset plate with the brace terminating before the line of restraint. The detailing requirements for such a connection are described in the Commentary.

#### 4. Gusset Plates

For out-of-plane brace buckling, welds that attach a gusset plate directly to a beam flange or column flange shall have available shear strength equal to  $0.6R_y F_y t_p / \alpha_s$  times the joint length, where

$F_y$  = specified minimum yield stress of the gusset plate, ksi (MPa)

$R_y$  = ratio of the expected yield stress to the specified minimum yield stress of the gusset plate

$t_p$  = thickness of the gusset plate, in. (mm)

Exception: Alternatively, these welds may be designed to have available strength to resist gusset-plate edge forces corresponding to the brace force specified in Section F2.6c.2 combined with the gusset plate weak-axis flexural strength determined in the presence of those forces.

**User Note:** The expected shear strength of the gusset plate may be developed using double-sided fillet welds with leg size equal to  $0.74t_p$  for ASTM A572 Grade 50 plate and  $0.62t_p$  for ASTM A36 plate and E70 electrodes. Smaller welds may be justified using the exception.

#### F2.6d. Column Splices

Column splices shall comply with the requirements of Section D2.5. Where groove welds are used to make the splice, they shall be complete-joint-penetration groove welds. Column splices shall be designed to develop at least 50% of the lesser plastic flexural strength,  $M_p$ , of the connected members, divided by  $\alpha_s$ .

The required shear strength shall be  $(\Sigma M_p / \alpha_s) / H_c$ ,

where

$H_c$  = clear height of the column between beam connections, including a structural slab, if present, in. (mm)

$\Sigma M_p$  = sum of the plastic flexural strengths,  $F_y Z$ , of the top and bottom ends of the column, kip-in. (N-mm)

### **F3. ECCENTRICALLY BRACED FRAMES (EBF)**

#### **F3.1. Scope**

Eccentrically braced frames (EBF) of structural steel shall be designed in conformance with this section.

#### **F3.2. Basis of Design**

This section is applicable to braced frames for which one end of each brace intersects a beam at an eccentricity from the intersection of the centerlines of the beam and an adjacent brace or column, forming a link that is subject to shear and flexure. Eccentricities less than the beam depth are permitted in the brace connection away from the link if the resulting member and connection forces are addressed in the design and do not change the expected source of inelastic deformation capacity.

EBF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide significant inelastic deformation capacity primarily through shear or flexural yielding in the links.

Where links connect directly to columns, design of their connections to columns shall provide the performance required by Section F3.6e.1 and demonstrate this conformance as required by Section F3.6e.2.

#### **F3.3. Analysis**

The required strength of diagonal braces and their connections, beams outside links, and columns shall be determined using the capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be taken as the forces developed in the member assuming the forces at the ends of the links correspond to the adjusted link shear strength. The adjusted link shear strength shall be taken as  $R_y$  times the link nominal shear strength,  $V_n$ , given in Section F3.5b.2 multiplied by 1.25 for I-shaped links and 1.4 for box links.

Exceptions:

- (a) The effect of capacity-limited horizontal forces,  $E_{cl}$ , is permitted to be taken as 0.88 times the forces determined in Section F3.3 for the design of the portions of beams outside links.

(b) It is permitted to neglect flexural forces resulting from seismic drift in this determination. Moment resulting from a load applied to the column between points of lateral support must be considered.

(c) The required strength of columns need not exceed the lesser of the following:

(1) Forces corresponding to the resistance of the foundation to overturning uplift

(2) Forces as determined from nonlinear analysis as defined in Section C3.

The inelastic link rotation angle shall be determined from the inelastic portion of the design story drift. Alternatively, the inelastic link rotation angle is permitted to be determined from nonlinear analysis as defined in Section C3.

**User Note:** The seismic load effect,  $E$ , used in the design of EBF members, such as the required axial strength used in the equations in Section F3.5, should be calculated from the analysis above.

### F3.4. System Requirements

#### F3.4a. Link Rotation Angle

The link rotation angle is the inelastic angle between the link and the beam outside of the link when the total story drift is equal to the design story drift,  $\Delta$ . The link rotation angle shall not exceed the following values:

(a) For links of length  $1.6M_p/V_p$  or less: 0.08 rad

(b) For links of length  $2.6M_p/V_p$  or greater: 0.02 rad

where

$M_p$  = plastic flexural strength of a link, kip-in. (N-mm)

$V_p$  = plastic shear strength of a link, kips (N)

Linear interpolation between the above values shall be used for links of length between  $1.6M_p/V_p$  and  $2.6M_p/V_p$ .

#### F3.4b. Bracing of Link

Bracing shall be provided at both the top and bottom link flanges at the ends of the link for I-shaped sections. Bracing shall have an available strength and stiffness as required for expected plastic hinge locations by Section D1.2c.

### F3.5. Members

#### F3.5a. Basic Requirements

Brace members shall satisfy width-to-thickness limitations in Section D1.1 for moderately ductile members.

Column members shall satisfy width-to-thickness limitations in Section D1.1 for highly ductile members.

Where the beam outside of the link is a different section from the link, the beam shall satisfy the width-to-thickness limitations in Section D1.1 for moderately ductile members.

**User Note:** The diagonal brace and beam segment outside of the link are intended to remain essentially elastic under the forces generated by the fully yielded and strain hardened link. Both the diagonal brace and beam segment outside of the link are typically subject to a combination of large axial force and bending moment, and therefore should be treated as beam-columns in design, where the available strength is defined by Chapter H of the Specification.

Where the beam outside the link is the same member as the link, its strength may be determined using expected material properties as permitted by Section A3.2.

### F3.5b. Links

Links subject to shear and flexure due to eccentricity between the intersections of brace centerlines and the beam centerline (or between the intersection of the brace and beam centerlines and the column centerline for links attached to columns) shall be provided. The link shall be considered to extend from brace connection to brace connection for center links and from brace connection to column face for link-to-column connections except as permitted by Section F3.6e.

#### 1. Limitations

Links shall be I-shaped cross sections (rolled wide-flange sections or built-up sections), or built-up box sections. HSS sections shall not be used as links.

Links shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for highly ductile members.

Exceptions: Flanges of links with I-shaped sections with link lengths,  $e \leq 1.6 M_p/V_p$ , are permitted to satisfy the requirements for moderately ductile members. Webs of links with box sections with link lengths,  $e \leq 1.6 M_p/V_p$ , are permitted to satisfy the requirements for moderately ductile members.

The web or webs of a link shall be single thickness. Doubler-plate reinforcement and web penetrations are not permitted.

For links made of built-up cross sections, complete-joint-penetration groove welds shall be used to connect the web (or webs) to the flanges.

Links of built-up box sections shall have a moment of inertia,  $I_y$ , about an axis in the plane of the EBF limited to  $I_y > 0.67 I_x$ , where  $I_x$  is the moment of inertia about an axis perpendicular to the plane of the EBF.

#### 2. Shear Strength

The link design shear strength,  $\phi_v V_n$ , and the allowable shear strength,  $V_n/\Omega_v$ , shall be the lower value obtained in accordance with the limit states of shear yielding in the web and flexural yielding in the gross section. For both limit states:

$$\phi_v = 0.90 \text{ (LRFD)} \quad \Omega_v = 1.67 \text{ (ASD)}$$

(a) For shear yielding:

$$V_n = V_p \quad (\text{F3-1})$$

where

$$V_p = 0.6F_y A_{lw} \text{ for } \alpha_s P_r / P_y \leq 0.15 \quad (\text{F3-2})$$

$$V_p = 0.6F_y A_{lw} \sqrt{1 - (\alpha_s P_r / P_y)^2} \text{ for } \alpha_s P_r / P_y > 0.15 \quad (\text{F3-3})$$

$$A_{lw} = (d - 2t_f)t_w \text{ for I-shaped link sections} \quad (\text{F3-4})$$

$$= 2(d - 2t_f)t_w \text{ for box link sections} \quad (\text{F3-5})$$

$$P_r = P_u \text{ (LRFD) or } P_a \text{ (ASD), as applicable}$$

$$P_u = \text{required axial strength using LRFD load combinations, kips (N)}$$

$$P_a = \text{required axial strength using ASD load combinations, kips (N)}$$

$$P_y = \text{nominal axial yield strength} = F_y A_g \quad (\text{F3-6})$$

(b) For flexural yielding:

$$V_n = 2M_p/e \quad (\text{F3-7})$$

where

$$M_p = F_y Z \text{ for } \alpha_s P_r / P_y \leq 0.15 \quad (\text{F3-8})$$

$$M_p = F_y Z \left( \frac{1 - \alpha_s P_r / P_y}{0.85} \right) \text{ for } \alpha_s P_r / P_y > 0.15 \quad (\text{F3-9})$$

$$e = \text{length of link, defined as the clear distance between the ends of two diagonal braces or between the diagonal brace and the column face, in. (mm)}$$

### 3. Link Length

If  $P_r/P_c > 0.15$ , the length of the link shall be limited as follows:

When  $\rho' \leq 0.5$

$$e \leq \frac{1.6M_p}{V_p} \quad (\text{F3-10})$$

When  $\rho' > 0.5$

$$e \leq \frac{1.6M_p}{V_p}(1.15 - 0.3\rho') \quad (\text{F3-11})$$

where

$$\rho' = \frac{P_r/P_y}{V_r/V_y} \quad (\text{F3-12})$$

$$\begin{aligned} V_r &= V_u \text{ (LRFD) or } V_a \text{ (ASD), as applicable, kips (N)} \\ V_u &= \text{required shear strength based on LRFD load combinations, kips (N)} \\ V_a &= \text{required shear strength based on ASD load combinations, kips (N)} \\ V_y &= \text{nominal shear yield strength, kips (N)} \\ &= 0.6F_yA_w \end{aligned} \quad (\text{F3-13})$$

**User Note:** For links with low axial force there is no upper limit on link length. The limitations on link rotation angle in Section F3.4a result in a practical lower limit on link length.

#### 4. Link Stiffeners for I-Shaped Cross Sections

Full-depth web stiffeners shall be provided on both sides of the link web at the diagonal brace ends of the link. These stiffeners shall have a combined width not less than  $(b_f - 2t_w)$  and a thickness not less than the larger of  $0.75t_w$  or 3/8 in. (10 mm), where  $b_f$  and  $t_w$  are the link flange width and link web thickness, respectively.

Links shall be provided with intermediate web stiffeners as follows:

- (a) Links of lengths  $1.6M_p/V_p$  or less shall be provided with intermediate web stiffeners spaced at intervals not exceeding  $(30t_w - d/5)$  for a link rotation angle of 0.08 rad or  $(52t_w - d/5)$  for link rotation angles of 0.02 rad or less. Linear interpolation shall be used for values between 0.08 and 0.02 rad.
- (b) Links of length greater than or equal to  $2.6M_p/V_p$  and less than  $5M_p/V_p$  shall be provided with intermediate web stiffeners placed at a distance of 1.5 times  $b_f$  from each end of the link.
- (c) Links of length between  $1.6M_p/V_p$  and  $2.6M_p/V_p$  shall be provided with intermediate web stiffeners meeting the requirements of (a) and (b) above.

Intermediate web stiffeners are not required in links of length greater than  $5M_p/V_p$ .

Intermediate web stiffeners shall be full depth. For links that are less than 25 in. (635 mm) in depth, stiffeners are required on only one side of the link web. The thickness of one-sided stiffeners shall not be less than  $t_w$  or 3/8 in. (10 mm), whichever is larger, and the width shall be not less than  $(b_f/2) - t_w$ . For links that are 25 in. (635

mm) in depth or greater, intermediate stiffeners with these dimensions are required on both sides of the web.

The required strength of fillet welds connecting a link stiffener to the link web is  $F_y A_{st} / \alpha_s$ , where  $A_{st}$  is the horizontal cross-sectional area of the link stiffener and  $F_y$  is the yield stress of the stiffener. The required strength of fillet welds connecting the stiffener to the link flanges is  $F_y A_{st} / (4\alpha_s)$ .

## 5. Link Stiffeners for Box Sections

Full-depth web stiffeners shall be provided on one side of each link web at the diagonal brace connection. These stiffeners are permitted to be welded to the outside or inside face of the link webs. These stiffeners shall each have a width not less than  $b/2$ , where  $b$  is the inside width of the box. These stiffeners shall each have a thickness not less than the larger of  $0.75t_w$  or  $1/2$  in. (13 mm).

Box links shall be provided with intermediate web stiffeners as follows:

- (a) For links of length  $1.6M_p/V_p$  or less and with web depth-to-thickness ratio,  $h/t_w$ , greater than or equal to  $0.67 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$ , full-depth web stiffeners shall be provided on one side of each link web, spaced at intervals not exceeding  $20t_w - (d - 2t_f)/8$ .
- (b) For links of length  $1.6M_p/V_p$  or less and with web depth-to-thickness ratio,  $h/t_w$ , less than  $0.67 \sqrt{\frac{E}{R_y F_y}}$ , no intermediate web stiffeners are required.
- (c) For links of length greater than  $1.6M_p/V_p$ , no intermediate web stiffeners are required.

Intermediate web stiffeners shall be full depth, and are permitted to be welded to the outside or inside face of the link webs.

The required strength of fillet welds connecting a link stiffener to the link web is  $F_y A_{st} / \alpha_s$ , where  $A_{st}$  is the horizontal cross-sectional area of the link stiffener.

**User Note:** Stiffeners of box links need not be welded to link flanges.

### F3.5c. Protected Zones

Links in EBFs are a protected zone, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.3.

### F3.6. Connections

**F3.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

The following welds are demand critical welds and shall satisfy the requirements of Sections A3.4b and I2.3:

- (a) Groove welds at column splices
- (b) Welds at column-to-base plate connections

Exception: Welds need not be considered demand critical when both of the following conditions are satisfied:

- (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is precluded by conditions of restraint, and
- (2) There is no net tension under load combinations including the overstrength seismic load.
- (c) Welds at beam-to-column connections conforming to Section F3.6b(c)
- (d) Where links connect to columns, welds attaching the link flanges and the link web to the column
- (e) In built-up beams, welds within the link connecting the webs to the flanges

**F3.6b. Beam-to-Column Connections**

Where a brace or gusset plate connects to both members at a beam-to-column connection, the connection shall conform to one of the following:

- (a) The connection assembly is a simple connection meeting the requirements of Specification Section B3.4a where the required rotation is taken to be 0.025 rad; or
- (b) The connection assembly is designed to resist a moment equal to the lesser of the following:
  - (1) A moment corresponding to the expected beam flexural strength,  $R_y M_p$ , multiplied by 1.1 and divided by  $\alpha_s$ .
  - (2) A moment corresponding to the sum of the expected column flexural strengths,  $\Sigma(R_y F_y Z)$ , multiplied by 1.1 and divided by  $\alpha_s$ .

This moment shall be considered in combination with the required strength of the brace connection and beam connection, including the diaphragm collector forces determined using the overstrength seismic load.

- (c) The beam-to-column connection satisfies the requirements of Section E1.6b(c).

**F3.6c. Brace Connections**

When oversized holes are used, the required strength for the limit state of bolt slip need not exceed the seismic load effect determined using the overstrength seismic load

Connections of braces designed to resist a portion of the link end moment shall be designed as fully restrained.

### F3.6d. Column Splices

Column splices shall comply with the requirements of Section D2.5. Where groove welds are used to make the splice, they shall be complete-joint-penetration groove welds. Column splices shall be designed to develop at least 50% of the lesser plastic flexural strength,  $M_p$ , of the connected members, divided by  $\alpha_s$ .

The required shear strength shall be  $\Sigma M_p / (\alpha_s H_c)$ ,

where

$H_c$  = clear height of the column between beam connections, including a structural slab, if present, in. (mm)

$\Sigma M_p$  = sum of the plastic flexural strengths,  $F_y Z$ , at the top and bottom ends of the column, kip-in. (N-mm)

### F3.6e. Link-to-Column Connections

#### 1. Requirements

Link-to-column connections shall be fully restrained (FR) moment connections and shall satisfy the following requirements:

- (a) The connection shall be capable of sustaining the link rotation angle specified in Section F3.4a.
- (b) The shear resistance of the connection, measured at the required link rotation angle, shall be at least equal to the expected shear strength of the link,  $R_y V_n$ , as defined in Section F3.5b.2.
- (c) The flexural resistance of the connection, measured at the required link rotation angle, shall be at least equal to the moment corresponding to the nominal shear strength of the link,  $V_n$ , as defined in Section F3.5b.2.

#### 2. Conformance Demonstration

Link-to-column connections shall satisfy the above requirements by one of the following:

- (a) Use a connection prequalified for EBF in accordance with Section K1.

**User Note:** There are no prequalified link-to-column connections.

- (b) Provide qualifying cyclic test results in accordance with Section K2. Results of at least two cyclic connection tests shall be provided and are permitted to be based on one of the following:

- (1) Tests reported in research literature or documented tests performed for other projects that are representative of project conditions, within the limits specified in Section K2.
- (2) Tests that are conducted specifically for the project and are representative of project member sizes, material strengths, connection configurations, and matching connection material properties, within the limits specified in Section K2.

Exception: Cyclic testing of the connection is not required if the following conditions are met:

- (a) Reinforcement at the beam-to-column connection at the link end precludes yielding of the beam over the reinforced length.
- (b) The available strength of the reinforced section and the connection equals or exceeds the required strength calculated based upon adjusted link shear strength as described in Section F3.3.
- (c) The link length (taken as the beam segment from the end of the reinforcement to the brace connection) does not exceed  $1.6M_p/V_p$ .
- (d) Full depth stiffeners as required in Section F3.5b.4 are placed at the link-to-reinforcement interface.

## **F4. BUCKLING-RESTRAINED BRACED FRAMES (BRBF)**

### **F4.1. Scope**

Buckling-restrained braced frames (BRBF) of structural steel shall be designed in conformance with this section.

### **F4.2. Basis of Design**

This section is applicable to frames with specially fabricated braces concentrically connected to beams and columns. Eccentricities less than the beam depth are permitted if the resulting member and connection forces are addressed in the design and do not change the expected source of inelastic deformation capacity.

BRBF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide significant inelastic deformation capacity primarily through brace yielding in tension and compression. Design of braces shall provide the performance required by Sections F4.5b.1 and F4.5b.2, and demonstrate this conformance as required by Section F4.5b.3. Braces shall be designed, tested and detailed to accommodate expected deformations. Expected deformations are those corresponding to a story drift of at least 2% of the story height or two times the design story

drift, whichever is larger, in addition to brace deformations resulting from deformation of the frame due to gravity loading.

BRBF shall be designed so that inelastic deformations under the design earthquake will occur primarily as brace yielding in tension and compression.

#### **F4.2a. Brace Strength**

The adjusted brace strength shall be established on the basis of testing as described in this section.

Where required by these Provisions, brace connections and adjoining members shall be designed to resist forces calculated based on the adjusted brace strength.

The adjusted brace strength in compression shall be  $\beta\omega R_y P_{ysc}$ , where

$\beta$  = compression strength adjustment factor

$\omega$  = strain hardening adjustment factor

$P_{ysc}$  = axial yield strength of steel core, ksi (MPa)

The adjusted brace strength in tension shall be  $\omega R_y P_{ysc}$ .

Exception: The factor  $R_y$  need not be applied if  $P_{ysc}$  is established using yield stress determined from a coupon test.

#### **F4.2b. Adjustment Factors**

Adjustment factors shall be determined as follows:

The compression strength adjustment factor,  $\beta$ , shall be calculated as the ratio of the maximum compression force to the maximum tension force of the test specimen measured from the qualification tests specified in Section K3.4c at strains corresponding to the expected deformations. The larger value of  $\beta$  from the two required brace qualification tests shall be used. In no case shall  $\beta$  be taken as less than 1.0.

The strain hardening adjustment factor,  $\omega$ , shall be calculated as the ratio of the maximum tension force measured from the qualification tests specified in Section K3.4c at strains corresponding to the expected deformations to the measured yield force,  $P_{ysc}$ , of the test specimen. The larger value of  $\omega$  from the two required qualification tests shall be used. Where the tested steel core material of the subassembly test specimen required in Section K3.2 does not match that of the prototype,  $\omega$  shall be based on coupon testing of the prototype material. .

#### **F4.2c. Brace Deformations**

The expected brace deformation shall be determined from the story drift specified in Section F4.2. Alternatively, the brace expected deformation is permitted to be determined from nonlinear analysis as defined in Section C3.

#### **F4.3. Analysis**

The required strength of columns, beams, struts and connections in BRBF shall be determined using the capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited horizontal

seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be taken as the forces developed in the member assuming the forces in all braces correspond to their adjusted strength in compression or in tension.

Braces shall be determined to be in compression or tension neglecting the effects of gravity loads. Analyses shall consider both directions of frame loading.

The adjusted brace strength in tension shall be as given in Section F4.2a.

Exceptions:

(a) It is permitted to neglect flexural forces resulting from seismic drift in this determination. Moment resulting from a load applied to the column between points of lateral support, including Section F4.4d loads, must be considered.

(b) The required strength of columns need not exceed the lesser of the following:

(1) The forces corresponding to the resistance of the foundation to overturning uplift. Section F4.4d in-plane column load requirements shall be adhered to.

(2) Forces as determined from nonlinear analysis as defined in Section C3.

#### **F4.4. System Requirements**

##### **F4.4a. V- and Inverted V-Braced Frames**

V-type and inverted-V-type braced frames shall satisfy the following requirements:

(a) The required strength of beams and struts intersected by braces, their connections and supporting members shall be determined based on the load combinations of the applicable building code assuming that the braces provide no support for dead and live loads. For load combinations that include earthquake effects, the vertical and horizontal earthquake effect,  $E$ , on the beam shall be determined from the adjusted brace strengths in tension and compression.

(b) Beams and struts shall be continuous between columns. Beams and struts shall be braced to satisfy the requirements for moderately ductile members in Section D1.2a.1.

As a minimum, one set of lateral braces is required at the point of intersection of the V-type (or inverted V-type) braces, unless the beam or strut has sufficient out-of-plane strength and stiffness to ensure stability between adjacent brace points.

**User Note:** The beam has sufficient out-of-plane strength and stiffness if the beam bent in the horizontal plane meets the required brace strength and required brace stiffness for column nodal bracing as prescribed in the Specification.  $P_u$  may be taken as the required compressive strength of the brace.

##### **F4.4b. K-Braced Frames**

K-type braced frames shall not be used for BRBF.

#### F4.4c Lateral Force Distribution

Where the compression strength adjustment factor,  $\beta$ , as determined in Section F4.2b exceeds 1.3, the lateral force distribution shall comply with the following:

Along any line of braces, braces shall be deployed in alternate directions such that, for either direction of force parallel to the braces, at least 30% but no more than 70% of the total horizontal force along that line is resisted by braces in tension, unless the available strength of each brace is larger than the required strength resulting from the overstrength seismic load. For the purposes of this provision, a line of braces is defined as a single line or parallel lines with a plan offset of 10% or less of the building dimension perpendicular to the line of braces.

#### F4.4d. Multi-tiered Braced Frames

A buckling-restrained braced frame is permitted to be configured as a multi-tiered braced frame (MT-BRBF) when the following requirements are satisfied.

(a) The effects of out-of-plane forces due to the mass of the structure and supported items as required by the applicable building code shall be combined with the forces obtained from the analyses required by Section F4.3.

(b) Struts shall be provided at every brace to column connection location.

(c) Columns shall satisfy the following requirements:

(1) Columns of multi-tiered braced frames shall be designed as simply supported for the height of the frame between points of out-of-plane support and shall satisfy the greater of the following in-plane load requirements at each tier:

(i) Loads induced by the summation of frame shears from adjusted brace strengths between adjacent tiers from Section F4.3 analysis. Analysis shall consider variation in permitted core strength.

**User Note:** Specifying the BRB using the desired brace capacity,  $P_{ysc}$ , rather than a desired core area is recommended for the multi-tiered buckling-restrained braced (BRB) frame to reduce the effect of material variability and allow for the design of equal or nearly equal tier capacities.

(ii) A minimum notional load equal to 0.5% times the adjusted braced strength frame shear of the higher strength adjacent tier. The notional load shall be applied to create the greatest load effect on the column.

(2) Columns shall be torsionally braced at every strut-to-column connection location.

**User Note:** The requirements for torsional bracing are typically satisfied by

connecting the strut to the column to restrain torsional movement of the column. The strut must have adequate flexural strength and stiffness and have an appropriate connection to the column to perform this function.

- (d) Each tier in a multi-tiered braced frame shall be subject to the drift limitations of the applicable building code, but the drift shall not exceed 2% of the tier height.

## **F4.5. Members**

### **F4.5a. Basic Requirements**

Beams and columns shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for moderately ductile members.

### **F4.5b. Diagonal Braces**

#### **1. Assembly**

Braces shall be composed of a structural steel core and a system that restrains the steel core from buckling.

##### **(a) Steel Core**

Plates used in the steel core that are 2 in. (50 mm) thick or greater shall satisfy the minimum notch toughness requirements of Section A3.3.

Splices in the steel core are not permitted.

##### **(b) Buckling-Restraining System**

The buckling-restraining system shall consist of the casing for the steel core. In stability calculations, beams, columns and gussets connecting the core shall be considered parts of this system.

The buckling-restraining system shall limit local and overall buckling of the steel core for the expected deformations.

**User Note:** Conformance to this provision is demonstrated by means of testing as described in Section F4.5b.3.

#### **2. Available Strength**

The steel core shall be designed to resist the entire axial force in the brace.

The brace design axial strength,  $\phi P_{ysc}$  (LRFD), and the brace allowable axial strength,  $P_{ysc}/\Omega$  (ASD), in tension and compression, in accordance with the limit state of yielding, shall be determined as follows:

$$P_{ysc} = F_{ysc} A_{sc} \quad (F4-1)$$

$$\phi = 0.90 \text{ (LRFD)} \quad \Omega = 1.67 \text{ (ASD)}$$

where

$A_{sc}$  = cross-sectional area of the yielding segment of the steel core, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

$F_{ysc}$  = specified minimum yield stress of the steel core, or actual yield stress of the steel core as determined from a coupon test, ksi (MPa)

**User Note:** Load effects calculated based on adjusted brace strengths should not be based upon the overstrength seismic load.

### 3. Conformance Demonstration

The design of braces shall be based upon results from qualifying cyclic tests in accordance with the procedures and acceptance criteria of Section K3. Qualifying test results shall consist of at least two successful cyclic tests: one is required to be a test of a brace subassembly that includes brace connection rotational demands complying with Section K3.2 and the other shall be either a uniaxial or a subassembly test complying with Section K3.3. Both test types shall be based upon one of the following:

- (a) Tests reported in research or documented tests performed for other projects
- (b) Tests that are conducted specifically for the project

Interpolation or extrapolation of test results for different member sizes shall be justified by rational analysis that demonstrates stress distributions and magnitudes of internal strains consistent with or less severe than the tested assemblies and that addresses the adverse effects of variations in material properties. Extrapolation of test results shall be based upon similar combinations of steel core and buckling-restraining system sizes. Tests are permitted to qualify a design when the provisions of Section K3 are met.

#### F4.5c. Protected Zones

The protected zone shall include the steel core of braces and elements that connect the steel core to beams and columns, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.3.

#### F4.6. Connections

##### F4.6a. Demand Critical Welds

The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- (a) Groove welds at column splices
- (b) Welds at the column-to-base plate connections

Exception: Welds need not be considered demand critical when both of the following conditions are satisfied:

- (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is precluded by conditions of restraint, and

- 4308 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations including the  
 4309 overstrength seismic load.  
 4310 (c) Welds at beam-to-column connections conforming to Section F4.6b(c)

#### 4311 **F4.6b. Beam-to-Column Connections**

4312 Where a brace or gusset plate connects to both members at a beam-to-column connection, the  
 4313 connection shall conform to one of the following:

- 4314 (a) The connection assembly shall be a simple connection meeting the requirements of  
 4315 Specification Section B3.4a where the required rotation is taken to be 0.025 rad; or  
 4316 (b) The connection assembly shall be designed to resist a moment equal to the lesser of  
 4317 the following:

- 4318 (1) A moment corresponding to the expected beam flexural strength,  $R_y M_p$   
 4319 multiplied by 1.1 and divided by  $\alpha_s$ .  
 4320 (2) A moment corresponding to the sum of the expected column flexural  
 4321 strengths,  $\Sigma(R_y F_y Z)$ , multiplied by 1.1 and divided by  $\alpha_s$ ,  
 4322 where  
 4323  $Z$  = plastic section modulus about the axis of bending, in.<sup>3</sup> (mm<sup>3</sup>)

4324 This moment shall be considered in combination with the required strength of the  
 4325 brace connection and beam connection, including the diaphragm collector forces  
 4326 determined using the overstrength seismic load.

- 4327 (c) The beam-to-column connection shall meet the requirements of Section E1.6b(c).

#### 4328 **F4.6c. Diagonal Brace Connections**

##### 4329 **1. Required Strength**

4330 The required strength of brace connections in tension and compression (including  
 4331 beam-to-column connections if part of the braced-frame system) shall be the adjusted  
 4332 brace strength divided by  $\alpha_s$ , where the adjusted brace strength is as defined in  
 4333 Section F4.2a.  
 4334

4335 When oversized holes are used, the required strength for the limit state of bolt slip  
 4336 need not exceed  $P_{ysc} / \alpha_s$ .

##### 4337 **2. Gusset Plate Requirements**

4338 Lateral bracing consistent with that used in the tests upon which the design is based  
 4339 is required.  
 4340

**User Note:** This provision may be met by designing the gusset plate for a transverse force consistent with transverse bracing forces determined from testing, by adding a stiffener to it to resist this force, or by providing a brace to the gusset plate. Where the supporting tests did not include transverse bracing, no such bracing is required. Any attachment of bracing to the steel core must be included in the qualification testing.

#### F4.6d. Column Splices

Column splices shall comply with the requirements of Section D2.5. Where groove welds are used to make the splice, they shall be complete-joint-penetration groove welds. Column splices shall be designed to develop at least 50% of the lesser plastic flexural strength,  $M_p$ , of the connected members, divided by  $\alpha_s$ .

The required shear strength,  $V_r$  shall be determined as follows:

$$V_r = \frac{\sum M_p}{\alpha_s H_c} \quad (F4-2)$$

where

$H_c$  = clear height of the column between beam connections, including a structural slab, if present, in. (mm)

$\sum M_p$  = sum of the plastic flexural strengths,  $F_y Z$ , top and bottom ends of the column, kip-in. (N-mm)

### F5. SPECIAL PLATE SHEAR WALLS (SPSW)

#### F5.1. Scope

Special plate shear walls (SPSW) of structural steel shall be designed in conformance with this section. This section is applicable to frames with steel web plates connected to beams and columns.

#### F5.2. Basis of Design

SPSW designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide significant inelastic deformation capacity primarily through web plate yielding and as plastic-hinge formation in the ends of horizontal boundary elements (HBEs). Vertical boundary elements (VBEs) are not expected to yield in shear; VBEs are not expected to yield in flexure except at the column base.

#### F5.3. Analysis

The webs of SPSW shall not be considered as resisting gravity forces.

- (a) An analysis in conformance with the applicable building code shall be performed. The required strength of web plates shall be 100% of the required shear strength of

the frame from this analysis. The required strength of the frame consisting of VBEs and HBEs alone shall be not less than 25% of the frame shear force from this analysis.

- (b) The required strength of HBEs, VBEs, and connections in SPSW shall be determined using the capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be determined from an analysis in which all webs are assumed to resist forces corresponding to their expected strength in tension at an angle,  $\alpha$ , as determined in Section F5.5b and HBE are resisting flexural forces at each end equal to  $1.1R_y M_p / \alpha_s$ . Webs shall be determined to be in tension neglecting the effects of gravity loads.

The expected web yield stress shall be taken as  $R_y F_y$ . When perforated walls are used, the effective expected tension stress is as defined in Section F5.7a.4.

Exception: The required strength of VBEs need not exceed the forces determined from nonlinear analysis as defined in Section C3.

**User Note:** Shear forces per Equation E1-1 must be included in this analysis. Designers should be aware that in some cases forces from the analysis in the applicable building code will govern the design of HBEs.

**User Note:** Shear forces in beams and columns are likely to be high and shear yielding must be evaluated.

#### F5.4. System Requirements

##### F5.4a. Stiffness of Boundary Elements

The stiffness of vertical boundary elements (VBEs) and horizontal boundary elements (HBEs) shall be such that the entire web plate is yielded at the design story drift. VBE and HBE conforming to the following requirements shall be deemed to comply with this requirement. The vertical boundary elements (VBEs) shall have moments of inertia about an axis taken perpendicular to the plane of the web,  $I_c$ , not less than  $0.0031t_w h^4/L$ . The horizontal boundary elements (HBEs) shall have moments of inertia about an axis taken perpendicular to the plane of the web,  $I_b$ , not less than  $0.0031L^4/h$  times the difference in web plate thicknesses above and below,

where

|       |   |   |                      |
|-------|---|---|----------------------|
| $I_b$ | = | moment of inertia of a HBE taken perpendicular to the | direction of the web |
|       |   | plate line, in. <sup>4</sup> (mm <sup>4</sup> )       |                      |
| $I_c$ | = | moment of inertia of a VBE taken perpendicular to the | direction of the web |
|       |   | plate line, in. <sup>4</sup> (mm <sup>4</sup> )       |                      |
| $L$   | = | distance between VBE centerlines, in. (mm)            |                      |
| $h$   | = | distance between HBE centerlines, in. (mm)            |                      |
| $t_w$ | = | thickness of the web, in. (mm)                        |                      |

**F5.4b. HBE-to-VBE Connection Moment Ratio**

The moment ratio provisions in Section E3.4a shall be met for all HBE/VBE intersections without including the effects of the webs.

**F5.4c. Bracing**

HBE shall be braced to satisfy the requirements for moderately ductile members in Section D1.2a.

**F5.4d. Openings in Webs**

Openings in webs shall be bounded on all sides by intermediate boundary elements extending the full width and height of the panel respectively, unless otherwise justified by testing and analysis or permitted by Section F5.7.

**F5.5. Members****F5.5a. Basic Requirements**

HBE, VBE and intermediate boundary elements shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for highly ductile members.

**F5.5b. Webs**

The panel design shear strength,  $\phi V_n$  (LRFD), and the allowable shear strength,  $V_n/\Omega$  (ASD), in accordance with the limit state of shear yielding, shall be determined as follows:

$$V_n = 0.42F_y t_w L_{cf} \sin 2\alpha \quad (\text{F5-1})$$

$$\phi = 0.90 \quad (\text{LRFD}) \quad \Omega = 1.67 \quad (\text{ASD})$$

where

$L_{cf}$  = clear distance between column flanges, in. (mm)

$t_w$  = thickness of the web, in. (mm)

$\alpha$  = angle of web yielding in degrees, as measured relative to the vertical. The angle of inclination,  $\alpha$ , is permitted to be taken as  $40^\circ$ , or is permitted to be calculated as follows:

$$\tan^4 \alpha = \frac{1 + \frac{t_w L}{2A_b}}{1 + t_w h \left( \frac{1}{A_b} + \frac{h^3}{360I_c L} \right)} \quad (\text{F5-2})$$

where

$A_b$  = cross-sectional area of an HBE, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

$A_c$  = cross-sectional area of a VBE, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

**F5.5c. HBE**

HBE shall be designed to preclude flexural yielding at regions other than near the beam-to-column connection. Either of the following is deemed to comply with this requirement:

4450 (a) HBE with available strength to resist twice the simple-span beam moment based on  
4451 gravity loading and web-plate yielding.

4452 (b) HBE with available strength to resist the simple-span beam moment based on  
4453 gravity loading and web-plate yielding and with reduced flanges meeting the  
4454 requirements of ANSI/AISC 358 Section 5.8 Step 1 with  $c = 0.25b_f$ .

#### 4455 **F5.5d. Protected Zone**

4456 The protected zone of SPSW shall satisfy Section D1.3 and include the following:

4457 (a) The webs of SPSW

4458 (b) Elements that connect webs to HBEs and VBEs

4459

4460 (c) The plastic hinging zones at each end of HBEs, over a region ranging from the face  
4461 of the column to one beam depth beyond the face of the column, or as otherwise  
4462 specified in Section E3.5c

4463

#### 4464 **F5.6. Connections**

##### 4465 **F5.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

4466 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section  
4467 A3.4b and I2.3:

4468 (a) Groove welds at column splices

4469 (b) Welds at column-to-base plate connections

4470 Exception: Welds need not be considered demand critical when both of the  
4471 following conditions are satisfied:

4472 (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is precluded by conditions of  
4473 restraint, and

4474 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations including the  
4475 overstrength seismic load.

4476 (c) Welds at HBE-to-VBE connections

##### 4477 **F5.6b. HBE-to-VBE Connections**

4478 HBE-to-VBE connections shall satisfy the requirements of Section E1.6b.

#### 4479 **1. Required Strength**

4480 The required shear strength of an HBE-to-VBE connection shall be determined using the  
4481 capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ ,  
4482 shall be taken as the shear calculated from Equation E1-1 together with the shear resulting  
4483 from the expected yield strength in tension of the webs yielding at an angle  $\alpha$ .

#### 4484 **2. Panel Zones**

The VBE panel zone next to the top and base HBE of the SPSW shall comply with the requirements in Section E3.6e.

#### F5.6c. Connections of Webs to Boundary Elements

The required strength of web connections to the surrounding HBE and VBE shall equal the expected yield strength, in tension, of the web calculated at an angle  $\alpha$ .

#### F5.6d. Column Splices

Column splices shall comply with the requirements of Section D2.5. Where welds are used to make the splice, they shall be complete-joint-penetration groove welds. Column splices shall be designed to develop at least 50% of the lesser plastic flexural strength,  $M_p$ , of the connected members, divided by  $\alpha_s$ . The required shear strength,  $V_r$ , shall be determined by Equation F4-2.

#### F5.7. Perforated Webs

##### F5.7a. Regular Layout of Circular Perforations

A perforated plate conforming to this section is permitted to be used as the web of an SPSW. Perforated webs shall have a regular pattern of holes of uniform diameter spaced evenly over the entire web-plate area in an array pattern so that holes align diagonally at a uniform angle to vertical. A minimum of four horizontal and four vertical lines of holes shall be used. Edges of openings shall have a surface roughness of 500  $\mu$ -in. (13 microns) or less.

##### 1. Strength

The panel design shear strength,  $\phi V_n$  (LRFD), and the allowable shear strength,  $V_n/\Omega$  (ASD), in accordance with the limit state of shear yielding, shall be determined as follows for perforated webs with holes that align diagonally at 45° from the horizontal:

$$V_n = 0.42F_y t_w L_{cf} \left( 1 - \frac{0.7D}{S_{diag}} \right) \quad (F5-3)$$

$$\phi = 0.90 \text{ (LRFD)} \quad \Omega = 1.67 \text{ (ASD)}$$

where

$D$  = diameter of the holes, in. (mm)

$S_{diag}$  = shortest center-to-center distance between the holes measured on the 45° diagonal, in. (mm)

**User Note:** Perforating webs in accordance with Section F5.7a forces the development of web yielding in a direction parallel to that of the holes alignment. As such, for the case addressed by Section F5.7a,  $\alpha$  is equal to 45°.

## 2. Spacing

The spacing,  $S_{diag}$ , shall be at least  $1.67D$ .

The distance between the first holes and web connections to the HBEs and VBEs shall be at least  $D$ , but shall not exceed  $(D+0.7S_{diag})$ .

## 3. Stiffness

The stiffness of such regularly perforated infill plates shall be calculated using an effective web-plate thickness,  $t_{eff}$ , given by:

$$t_{eff} = \frac{1 - \frac{\pi}{4} \left( \frac{D}{S_{diag}} \right)}{1 - \frac{\pi}{4} \left( \frac{D}{S_{diag}} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{N_r D \sin \alpha}{H_c} \right)} t_w \quad (F5-4)$$

where

$H_c$  = clear column (and web-plate) height between beam flanges, in. (mm)

$N_r$  = number of horizontal rows of perforations

$t_w$  = web-plate thickness, in. (mm)

$\alpha$  = angle of the shortest center-to-center lines in the opening array to vertical, degrees

## 4. Effective Expected Tension Stress

The effective expected tension stress to be used in place of the effective tension stress for analysis per Section F5.3 is  $R_y F_y (1 - 0.7 D/S_{diag})$ .

### F5.7b. Reinforced Corner Cut-Out

Quarter-circular cut-outs are permitted at the corners of the webs provided that the webs are connected to a reinforcement arching plate following the edge of the cut-outs. The plates shall be designed to allow development of the full strength of the solid web and maintain its resistance when subjected to deformations corresponding to the design story drift. This is deemed to be achieved if the following conditions are met.

#### 1. Design for Tension

The arching plate shall have the available strength to resist the axial tension force resulting from web-plate tension in the absence of other forces:

$$P_r = \frac{R_y F_y t_w R^2 / \alpha_s}{4e} \quad (F5-5)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} R &= \text{radius of the cut-out, in. (mm)} \\ R_y &= \text{ratio of the expected yield stress to the specified minimum yield stress} \\ e &= R(1 - \sqrt{2}/2), \text{ in. (mm)} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{F5-6})$$

HBEs and VBEs shall be designed to resist the tension axial forces acting at the end of the arching reinforcement.

## 2. Design for Combined Axial and Flexural Forces

The arching plate shall have the available strength to resist the combined effects of axial force and moment in the plane of the web resulting from connection deformation in the absence of other forces. These forces are:

$$P_r = \frac{15EI_y}{\alpha_s(16e^2)} \left( \frac{\Delta}{H} \right) \quad (\text{F5-7})$$

The moments are:

$$M_r = P_r e \quad (\text{F5-8})$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \text{modulus of elasticity, ksi (MPa)} \\ H &= \text{height of story, in. (mm)} \\ I_y &= \text{moment of inertia of the plate about the y-axis, in.}^4 \text{ (mm}^4\text{)} \\ \Delta &= \text{design story drift, in. (mm)} \end{aligned}$$

HBEs and VBEs shall be designed to resist the combined axial and flexural forces acting at the end of the arching reinforcement.

4600

**CHAPTER G**

4601

**COMPOSITE MOMENT-FRAME SYSTEMS**

4602

4603

This chapter provides the basis of design, the requirements for analysis, and the requirements for the system, members and connections for composite moment frame systems.

4604

4605

4606

4607

The chapter is organized as follows:

4608

4609

G1. Composite Ordinary Moment Frames (C-OMF)

4610

G2. Composite Intermediate Moment Frames (C-IMF)

4611

G3. Composite Special Moment Frames (C-SMF)

4612

G4. Composite Partially Restrained Moment Frames (C-PRMF)

4613

**User Note:** The requirements of this chapter are in addition to those required by the Specification and the applicable building code.

4614

4615

**G1. COMPOSITE ORDINARY MOMENT FRAMES (C-OMF)**

4616

**G1.1. Scope**

4617

4618

4619

4620

4621

Composite ordinary moment frames (C-OMF) shall be designed in conformance with this section. This section is applicable to moment frames with fully restrained (FR) connections that consist of either composite or reinforced concrete columns and structural steel, concrete-encased composite, or composite beams.

4622

**G1.2. Basis of Design**

4623

4624

4625

C-OMF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide minimal inelastic deformation capacity in their members and connections.

4626

4627

4628

The requirements of Sections A1, A2, A3.5, A4, B1, B2, B3, B4 and D2.7, and Chapter C apply to C-OMF. All other requirements in Chapters A, B, D, I, J and K do not apply to C-OMF.

4629

4630

4631

4632

4633

4634

4635

**User Note:** Composite ordinary moment frames, comparable to reinforced concrete ordinary moment frames, are only permitted in seismic design categories B or below in ASCE/SEI 7. This is in contrast to steel ordinary moment frames, which are permitted in higher seismic design categories. The design requirements are commensurate with providing minimal ductility in the members and connections.

4636

**G1.3. Analysis**

4637 There are no requirements specific to this system.

4638 **G1.4. System Requirements**

4639 There are no requirements specific to this system.

4640 **G1.5. Members**

4641 There are no additional requirements for steel or composite members  
4642 beyond those in the Specification. Reinforced concrete columns shall  
4643 satisfy the requirements of ACI 318, excluding Chapter 18.

4644 **G1.5a. Protected Zones**

4645 There are no designated protected zones.

4646 **G1.6. Connections**

4647  
4648 Connections shall be fully restrained (FR) and shall satisfy the  
4649 requirements of Section D2.7.

4650 **G1.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

4651 There are no requirements specific to this system.

4652 **G2. COMPOSITE INTERMEDIATE MOMENT FRAMES (C-IMF)**

4653 **G2.1. Scope**

4654 Composite intermediate moment frames (C-IMF) shall be designed in  
4655 conformance with this section. This section is applicable to moment  
4656 frames with fully restrained (FR) connections that consist of composite  
4657 or reinforced concrete columns and structural steel, concrete-encased  
4658 composite or composite beams.

4659 **G2.2. Basis of Design**

4660 C-IMF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to  
4661 provide limited inelastic deformation capacity through flexural  
4662 yielding of the C-IMF beams and columns, and shear yielding of the  
4663 column panel zones. Design of connections of beams to columns,  
4664 including panel zones, continuity plates and diaphragms shall provide  
4665 the performance required by Section G2.6b, and demonstrate this  
4666 conformance as required by Section G2.6c.

4667 **User Note:** Composite intermediate moment frames, comparable to  
4668 reinforced concrete intermediate moment frames, are only permitted in  
4669 seismic design categories C or below in ASCE/SEI 7. This is in  
4670 contrast to steel intermediate moment frames, which are permitted in  
4671 higher seismic design categories. The design requirements are

4672 commensurate with providing limited ductility in the members and  
4673 connections.

4674 **G2.3. Analysis**

4675 There are no requirements specific to this system.

4676 **G2.4. System Requirements**

4677 **G2.4a. Stability Bracing of Beams**

4678 Beams shall be braced to satisfy the requirements for moderately  
4679 ductile members in Section D1.2a.

4680 In addition, unless otherwise indicated by testing, beam braces shall be  
4681 placed near concentrated forces, changes in cross section, and other  
4682 locations where analysis indicates that a plastic hinge will form during  
4683 inelastic deformations of the C-IMF.

4684 The required strength and stiffness of stability bracing provided  
4685 adjacent to plastic hinges shall be in accordance with Section D1.2c.

4686 **G2.5. Members**

4687 **G2.5a. Basic Requirements**

4688 Steel and composite members shall satisfy the requirements of Section  
4689 D1.1 for moderately ductile members.

4690 **G2.5b. Beam Flanges**

4691 Abrupt changes in the beam flange area are prohibited in plastic hinge  
4692 regions. The drilling of flange holes or trimming of beam flange width  
4693 is not permitted unless testing or qualification demonstrates that the  
4694 resulting configuration is able to develop stable plastic hinges to  
4695 accommodate the required story drift angle.

4696 **G2.5c. Protected Zones**

4697 The region at each end of the beam subject to inelastic straining shall  
4698 be designated as a protected zone, and shall satisfy the requirements of  
4699 Section D1.3.

4700 **User Note:** The plastic hinge zones at the ends of C-IMF beams  
4701 should be treated as protected zones. In general, the protected zone  
4702 will extend from the face of the composite column to one-half of the  
4703 beam depth beyond the plastic hinge point.

4704 **G2.6. Connections**

4705

4706 Connections shall be fully-restrained (FR) and shall satisfy the  
4707 requirements of Section D2 and this section.

4708 **G2.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

4709 There are no requirements specific to this system.

4710 **G2.6b. Beam-to-Column Connections**

4711 Beam-to-composite column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy  
4712 the following requirements:

- 4713 (a) The connection shall be capable of accommodating a story drift  
4714 angle of at least 0.02 rad.
- 4715 (b) The measured flexural resistance of the connection, determined  
4716 at the column face, shall equal at least  $0.80M_p$  of the connected  
4717 beam at a story drift angle of 0.02 rad, where  $M_p$  is defined as  
4718 the plastic flexural strength of the steel, concrete-encased or  
4719 composite beams and shall satisfy the requirements of  
4720 Specification Chapter I.

4721 **G2.6c. Conformance Demonstration**

4722 Beam-to-column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy the  
4723 requirements of Section G2.6b by one of the following:

- 4724 (a) Use of C-IMF connections designed in accordance with  
4725 ANSI/AISC 358.
- 4726 (b) Use of a connection prequalified for C-IMF in accordance with  
4727 Section K1.
- 4728 (c) Results of at least two qualifying cyclic test results conducted  
4729 in accordance with Section K2. The tests are permitted to be  
4730 based on one of the following:  
4731 (1) Tests reported in the research literature or documented  
4732 tests performed for other projects that represent the project  
4733 conditions, within the limits specified in Section K2.  
4734 (2) Tests that are conducted specifically for the project and are  
4735 representative of project member sizes, material strengths,  
4736 connection configurations, and matching connection  
4737 processes, within the limits specified in Section K2.
- 4738 (d) Calculations that are substantiated by mechanistic models and  
4739 component limit state design criteria consistent with these  
4740 provisions.  
4741  
4742

4743 **G2.6d. Required Shear Strength**

4744 The required shear strength of the connection shall be determined  
4745 using the capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited

horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be taken as:

$$E_{cl} = 2(1.1M_{p,exp})/L_h \quad (G2-1)$$

where  $M_{p,exp}$  is the expected flexural strength of the steel, concrete-encased or composite beam, kip-in. (N-mm). For a concrete-encased or composite beam,  $M_{p,exp}$  shall be calculated using the plastic stress distribution or the strain compatibility method. Applicable  $R_y$  factors shall be used for different elements of the cross section while establishing section force equilibrium and calculating the flexural strength.  $L_h$  shall be equal to the distance between beam plastic hinge locations, in. (mm).

**User Note:** For steel beams,  $M_{p,exp}$  in Equation G2-1 may be taken as  $R_y M_p$  of the beam.

#### G2.6e. Connection Diaphragm Plates

Connection diaphragm plates are permitted for filled composite columns both external to the column and internal to the column.

Where diaphragm plates are used, the thickness of the plates shall be at least the thickness of the beam flange.

The diaphragm plates shall be welded around the full perimeter of the column using either complete-joint-penetration groove welds or two sided fillet welds. The required strength of these joints shall not be less than the available strength of the contact area of the plate with the column sides.

Internal diaphragms shall have circular openings sufficient for placing the concrete.

#### G2.6f. Column Splices

In addition to the requirements of Section D2.5, column splices shall comply with the requirements of this section. Where welds are used to make the splice, they shall be complete-joint-penetration groove welds. When column splices are not made with groove welds, they shall have a required flexural strength that is at least equal to the nominal flexural strength,  $M_{pcc}$ , of the smaller composite column. The required shear strength of column web splices shall be at least equal to  $\Sigma M_{pcc}/H$ , where  $\Sigma M_{pcc}$  is the sum of the plastic flexural strengths at the top and bottom ends of the composite column. For composite columns, the nominal flexural strength shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Chapter I including the required axial strength,  $P_{rc}$ .

4782 **G3. COMPOSITE SPECIAL MOMENT FRAMES (C-SMF)**

4783 **G3.1. Scope**

4784 Composite special moment frames (C-SMF) shall be designed in  
4785 conformance with this section. This section is applicable to moment  
4786 frames with fully restrained (FR) connections that consist of either  
4787 composite or reinforced concrete columns and either structural steel or  
4788 concrete-encased composite or composite beams.

4789 **G3.2. Basis of Design**

4790 C-SMF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to  
4791 provide significant inelastic deformation capacity through flexural  
4792 yielding of the C-SMF beams and limited yielding of the column panel  
4793 zones. Except where otherwise permitted in this section, columns shall  
4794 be designed to be stronger than the fully yielded and strain-hardened  
4795 beams or girders. Flexural yielding of columns at the base is permitted.  
4796 Design of connections of beams to columns, including panel zones,  
4797 continuity plates and diaphragms shall provide the performance  
4798 required by Section G3.6b, and demonstrate this conformance as  
4799 required by Section G3.6c.

4800 **G3.3. Analysis**

4801 For special moment frame systems that consist of isolated planar  
4802 frames, there are no additional analysis requirements.  
4803

4804 For moment frame systems that include columns that form part of two  
4805 intersecting special moment frames in orthogonal or multi-axial  
4806 directions, the column analysis of Section G3.4a shall consider the  
4807 potential for beam yielding in both orthogonal directions  
4808 simultaneously.  
4809

4810 **G3.4. System Requirements**

4811 **G3.4a. Moment Ratio**

4812 The following relationship shall be satisfied at beam-to-column  
4813 connections:

4814 
$$\frac{\sum M_{pcc}^*}{\sum M_{p,exp}^*} > 1.0 \quad (G3-1)$$

4815 where

4816  $\Sigma M_{pcc}^*$  = sum of the moments in the columns above and below  
4817 the joint at the intersection of the beam and column

ment [LCA1]: Editorial change to be  
istent with E3.4a symbols.

centerlines, kip-in. (N-mm).  $\Sigma M_{pcc}^*$  is determined by summing the projections of the nominal flexural strengths,  $M_{pcc}$ , of the columns (including haunches where used) above and below the joint to the beam centerline with a reduction for the axial force in the column. For composite columns, the nominal flexural strength,  $M_{pcc}$ , shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Chapter I including the required axial strength,  $P_{rc}$ . For reinforced concrete columns, the nominal flexural strength,  $M_{pcc}$ , shall be calculated based on the provisions of ACI 318 including the required axial strength,  $P_{rc}$ . When the centerlines of opposing beams in the same joint do not coincide, the mid-line between centerlines shall be used.

ment [LCA2]: Editorial change to be  
istent with E3.4a symbols.

$\Sigma M_{p,exp}^*$  = sum of the moments in the steel beams or concrete-encased composite beams at the intersection of the beam and column centerlines, kip-in. (N-mm).  $\Sigma M_{p,exp}^*$  is determined by summing projections of the expected flexural strengths of the beams at the plastic hinge locations to the column centerline. It is permitted to take  $\Sigma M_{p,exp}^* = \Sigma(1.1M_{p,exp} + M_{uv})$ , where  $M_{p,exp}$  is calculated as specified in Section G2.6d.

ment [LCA3]: Editorial change to match  
symbols.

$M_{uv}$  = additional moment due to shear amplification from the location of the plastic hinge to the column centerline, kip-in. (N-mm).

Exception: The exceptions of Section E3.4a shall apply except that the force limit in Section E3.4a shall be  $P_{rc} < 0.1P_c$ .

#### G3.4b. Stability Bracing of Beams

Beams shall be braced to satisfy the requirements for highly ductile members in Section D1.2b.

In addition, unless otherwise indicated by testing, beam braces shall be placed near concentrated forces, changes in cross section, and other locations where analysis indicates that a plastic hinge will form during inelastic deformations of the C-SMF.

The required strength and stiffness of stability bracing provided adjacent to plastic hinges shall be in accordance with Section D1.2c.

#### G3.4c. Stability Bracing at Beam-to-Column Connections

Composite columns with unbraced connections shall satisfy the requirements of Section E3.4c.2.

4857 **G3.5. Members**4858 **G3.5a. Basic Requirements**

4859 Steel and composite members shall satisfy the requirements of  
4860 Sections D1.1 for highly ductile members.

4861  
4862 Exception: Reinforced concrete-encased beams shall satisfy the  
4863 requirements for Section D1.1 for moderately ductile members if the  
4864 reinforced concrete cover is at least 2 in. (50 mm) and confinement is  
4865 provided by hoop reinforcement in regions where plastic hinges are  
4866 expected to occur under seismic deformations. Hoop reinforcement  
4867 shall satisfy the requirements of ACI 318 Section 18.6.4.

4868  
4869 Concrete-encased composite beams that are part of C-SMF shall also  
4870 satisfy the following requirement. The distance from the maximum  
4871 concrete compression fiber to the plastic neutral axis shall not exceed:  
4872

$$4873 \quad Y_{PNA} = \frac{Y_{con} + d}{1 + \left( \frac{1,700 F_y}{E} \right)} \quad (G3-2)$$

4874 where

4875  $E$  = modulus of elasticity of the steel beam, ksi (MPa)  
4876  $F_y$  = specified minimum yield stress of the steel beam, ksi  
4877 (MPa)  
4878  $Y_{con}$  = distance from the top of the steel beam to the top of  
4879 the concrete, in. (mm)  
4880  $d$  = overall beam depth, in. (mm)

4881 **G3.5b. Beam Flanges**

4882 Abrupt changes in beam flange area are prohibited in plastic hinge  
4883 regions. The drilling of flange holes or trimming of beam flange width  
4884 is prohibited unless testing or qualification demonstrates that the  
4885 resulting configuration can develop stable plastic hinges to  
4886 accommodate the required story drift angle.

4887 **G3.5c. Protected Zones**

4888 The region at each end of the beam subject to inelastic straining shall  
4889 be designated as a protected zone, and shall satisfy the requirements of  
4890 Section D1.3.

4891 **User Note:** The plastic hinge zones at the ends of C-SMF beams  
4892 should be treated as protected zones. In general, the protected zone

4893 will extend from the face of the composite column to one-half of the  
4894 beam depth beyond the plastic hinge point.

### 4895 **G3.6. Connections**

4896  
4897 Connections shall be fully restrained (FR) and shall satisfy the  
4898 requirements of Section D2 and this section.

4899 **User Note:** All subsections of Section D2 are relevant for C-SMF.

### 4900 **G3.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

4901 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the  
4902 requirements of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- 4903 (a) Groove welds at column splices
- 4904 (b) Welds at the column-to-base plate connections
- 4905 Exception: Welds need not be considered demand  
4906 critical when both of the following conditions are  
4907 satisfied:
  - 4908 (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is  
4909 precluded by conditions of restraint, and
  - 4910 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations  
4911 including the overstrength seismic load.
- 4912 (c) Complete-joint-penetration groove welds of beam flanges to  
4913 columns, diaphragm plates that serve as a continuation of beam  
4914 flanges, shear plates within the girder depth that transition from  
4915 the girder to an encased steel shape, and beam webs to columns

### 4916 **G3.6b. Beam-to-Column Connections**

4917 Beam-to-composite column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy  
4918 the following requirements:

- 4919 (a) The connection shall be capable of accommodating a story drift  
4920 angle of at least 0.04 rad.
- 4921 (b) The measured flexural resistance of the connection, determined  
4922 at the column face, shall equal at least  $0.80M_p$  of the connected  
4923 beam at a story drift angle of 0.04 rad, where  $M_p$  is calculated  
4924 as in Section G2.6b.

4925 **G3.6c. Conformance Demonstration**

4926 Beam-to-composite column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy  
4927 the requirements of Section G3.6b by one of the following:

- 4928 (a) Use of C-SMF connections designed in accordance with  
4929 ANSI/AISC 358
- 4930 (b) Use of a connection prequalified for C-SMF in accordance  
4931 with Section K1.
- 4932 (c) The connections shall be qualified using test results obtained in  
4933 accordance with Section K2. Results of at least two cyclic  
4934 connection tests shall be provided, and shall be based on one of  
4935 the following:
- 4936 (1) Tests reported in research literature or documented tests  
4937 performed for other projects that represent the project  
4938 conditions, within the limits specified in Section K2.
- 4939 (2) Tests that are conducted specifically for the project and  
4940 are representative of project member sizes, material  
4941 strengths, connection configurations, and matching  
4942 connection processes, within the limits specified by  
4943 Section K2.
- 4944 (d) When beams are uninterrupted or continuous through the  
4945 composite or reinforced concrete column, beam flange welded  
4946 joints are not used, and the connection is not otherwise  
4947 susceptible to premature fracture, other substantiating data is  
4948 permitted to demonstrate conformance.

4949 Connections that accommodate the required story drift angle within  
4950 the connection elements and provide the measured flexural resistance  
4951 and shear strengths specified in Section G3.6d are permitted. In  
4952 addition to satisfying the preceding requirements, the design shall  
4953 demonstrate that any additional drift due to connection deformation is  
4954 accommodated by the structure. The design shall include analysis for  
4955 stability effects of the overall frame, including second-order effects.

4960 **G3.6d. Required Shear Strength**

4961 The required shear strength of the connection,  $V_u$ , shall be determined  
4962 using the capacity-limited seismic load effect. The capacity-limited  
4963 horizontal seismic load effect,  $E_{cl}$ , shall be taken as:

4964 
$$E_{cl} = 2[1.1M_{p,exp}]/L_h \quad (G3-3)$$

4965 where  $M_{p,exp}$  is the expected flexural strength of the steel, concrete-  
4966 encased, or composite beams. For concrete-encased or composite  
4967 beams,  $M_{p,exp}$  shall be calculated according to Section G2.6d, and  $L_h$   
4968 shall be equal to the distance between beam plastic hinge locations, in.  
4969 (mm).

4970 **G3.6e. Connection Diaphragm Plates**

4971 The continuity plates or diaphragms used for infilled column moment  
4972 connections shall satisfy the requirements of Section G2.6e.

4973 **G3.6f. Column Splices**

4974 Composite column splices shall satisfy the requirements of Section  
4975 G2.6f.

4976 **G4. COMPOSITE PARTIALLY RESTRAINED MOMENT**  
4977 **FRAMES (C-PRMF)**

4978 **G4.1. Scope**

4979 Composite partially restrained moment frames (C-PRMF) shall be  
4980 designed in conformance with this section. This section is applicable  
4981 to moment frames that consist of structural steel columns and  
4982 composite beams that are connected with partially restrained (PR)  
4983 moment connections that satisfy the requirements in Specification  
4984 Section B3.4b(b).

4985 **G4.2. Basis of Design**

4986 C-PRMF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to  
4987 provide significant inelastic deformation capacity through yielding in  
4988 the ductile components of the composite PR beam-to-column moment  
4989 connections. Flexural yielding of columns at the base is permitted.  
4990 Design of connections of beams to columns shall be based on  
4991 connection tests that provide the performance required by Section  
4992 G4.6c, and demonstrate this conformance as required by Section  
4993 G4.6d.

4994 **G4.3. Analysis**

4995 Connection flexibility and composite beam action shall be accounted  
4996 for in determining the dynamic characteristics, strength and drift of C-  
4997 PRMF.

4998 For purposes of analysis, the stiffness of beams shall be determined  
4999 with an effective moment of inertia of the composite section.

**5000 G4.4. System Requirements**

5001 There are no requirements specific to this system.

**5002 G4.5. Members****5003 G4.5a. Columns**

5004 Steel columns shall satisfy the requirements of Sections D1.1 for  
5005 moderately ductile members.

**5006 G4.5b. Beams**

5007 Composite beams shall be unencased, fully composite, and shall meet  
5008 the requirements of Section D1.1 for moderately ductile members. A  
5009 solid slab shall be provided for a distance of 12 in. (300 mm) from the  
5010 face of the column in the direction of moment transfer.

**5011 G4.5c. Protected Zones**

5012 There are no designated protected zones.

**5013 G4.6. Connections**

5014  
5015 Connections shall be partially restrained (PR) and shall satisfy the  
5016 requirements of Section D2 and this section.

5017 **User Note:** All subsections of Section D2 are relevant for C-PRMF.

**5018 G4.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

5019 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the  
5020 requirements of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- 5021 (a) Groove welds at column splices  
5022 (b) Welds at the column-to-base plate connections

5023 Exception: Welds need not be considered demand  
5024 critical when both of the following conditions are  
5025 satisfied:

- 5026 (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is  
5027 precluded by conditions of restraint, and  
5028 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations  
5029 including the overstrength seismic load.

**5030 G4.6b. Required Strength**

5031 The required strength of the beam-to-column PR moment connections  
5032

5033 shall be determined including the effects of connection flexibility and  
5034 second-order moments.

5035 **G4.6c. Beam-to-Column Connections**

5036 Beam-to-composite column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy  
5037 the following requirements:

5038 (a) The connection shall be capable of accommodating a  
5039 connection rotation of at least 0.02 rad.

5040 (b) The measured flexural resistance of the connection determined  
5041 at the column face shall increase monotonically to a value of at  
5042 least  $0.5M_p$  of the connected beam at a connection rotation of  
5043 0.02 rad, where  $M_p$  is defined as the moment corresponding to  
5044 plastic stress distribution over the composite cross section, and  
5045 shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Chapter I.

5046 **G4.6d. Conformance Demonstration**

5047 Beam-to-column connections used in the SFRS shall satisfy the  
5048 requirements of Section G4.6c by provision of qualifying cyclic test  
5049 results in accordance with Section K2. Results of at least two cyclic  
5050 connection tests shall be provided, and shall be based on one of the  
5051 following:

5052 (a) Tests reported in research literature or documented tests  
5053 performed for other projects that represent the project  
5054 conditions, within the limits specified in Section K2.

5055 (b) Tests that are conducted specifically for the project and are  
5056 representative of project member sizes, material strengths,  
5057 connection configurations, and matching connection processes,  
5058 within the limits specified by Section K2.  
5059

5060 **G4.6e. Column Splices**

5061 Column splices shall satisfy the requirements of Section G2.6f.

**CHAPTER H****COMPOSITE BRACED-FRAME AND SHEAR-WALL SYSTEMS**

This chapter provides the basis of design, the requirements for analysis, and the requirements for the system, members and connections for composite braced frame and shear wall systems.

The chapter is organized as follows:

- H1. Composite Ordinary Braced Frames (C-OBF)
- H2. Composite Special Concentrically Braced Frames (C-SCBF)
- H3. Composite Eccentrically Braced Frames (C-EBF)
- H4. Composite Ordinary Shear Walls (C-OSW)
- H5. Composite Special Shear Walls (C-SSW)
- H6. Composite Plate Shear Walls—Concrete Encased (C-PSW/CE)
- H7. Composite Plate Shear Walls—Concrete Filled (C-PSW/CF)

**User Note:** The requirements of this chapter are in addition to those required by the Specification and the applicable building code.

**H1. COMPOSITE ORDINARY BRACED FRAMES (C-OBF)****H1.1. Scope**

Composite ordinary braced frames (C-OBF) shall be designed in conformance with this section. Columns shall be structural steel, encased composite, filled composite or reinforced concrete members. Beams shall be either structural steel or composite beams. Braces shall be structural steel or filled composite members. This section is applicable to braced frames that consist of concentrically connected members where at least one of the elements (columns, beams or braces) is a composite or reinforced concrete member.

**H1.2. Basis of Design**

This section is applicable to braced frames that consist of concentrically connected members. Eccentricities less than the beam depth are permitted if they are accounted for in the member design by determination of eccentric moments.

C-OBF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide limited inelastic deformations in their members and connections.

The requirements of Sections A1, A2, A3.5, A4, B1, B2, B3, B4 and D2.7, and Chapter C apply to C-OBF. All other requirements in

5138 Chapters A, B, D, I, J and K do not apply to C-OBF.

5139 **User Note:** Composite ordinary braced frames, comparable to other  
5140 steel braced frames designed per the Specification using  $R = 3$ , are  
5141 only permitted in seismic design categories A, B or C in ASCE/SEI 7.  
5142 This is in contrast to steel ordinary braced frames, which are permitted  
5143 in higher seismic design categories. The design requirements are  
5144 commensurate with providing minimal ductility in the members and  
5145 connections.

5146 **H1.3. Analysis**

5147 There are no requirements specific to this system.

5148 **H1.4. System Requirements**

5149 There are no requirements specific to this system.

5150 **H1.5. Members**

5151 **H1.5a. Basic Requirements**

5152 There are no requirements specific to this system.

5153 **H1.5b. Columns**

5154 There are no requirements specific to this system. Reinforced concrete  
5155 columns shall satisfy the requirements of ACI 318, excluding Chapter  
5156 18.

5157 **H1.5c. Braces**

5158 There are no requirements specific to this system.

5159 **H1.5d. Protected Zones**

5160 There are no designated protected zones.

5161 **H1.6. Connections**

5162 Connections shall satisfy the requirements of Section D2.7.

5163 **H1.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

5164 There are no requirements specific to this system.

5165 **H2. COMPOSITE SPECIAL CONCENTRICALLY BRACED**  
5166 **FRAMES (C-SCBF)**

5167 **H2.1. Scope**

5168 Composite special concentrically braced frames (C-SCBF) shall be  
5169 designed in conformance with this section. Columns shall be encased  
5170 or filled composite. Beams shall be either structural steel or composite  
5171 beams. Braces shall be structural steel or filled composite members.  
5172 Collector beams that connect C-SCBF braces shall be considered to be  
5173 part of the C-SCBF.

## 5174 H2.2. Basis of Design

5175 This section is applicable to braced frames that consist of  
5176 concentrically connected members. Eccentricities less than the beam  
5177 depth are permitted if the resulting member and connection forces are  
5178 addressed in the design and do not change the expected source of  
5179 inelastic deformation capacity.

5180 C-SCBF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to  
5181 provide significant inelastic deformation capacity primarily through  
5182 brace buckling and yielding of the brace in tension.

## 5183 H2.3. Analysis

5184 The analysis requirements for C-SCBF shall satisfy the analysis  
5185 requirements of Section F2.3 modified to account for the entire  
5186 composite section in determining the expected brace strengths in  
5187 tension and compression.

## 5188 H2.4. System Requirements

5189 The system requirements for C-SCBF shall satisfy the system  
5190 requirements of Section F2.4. Composite braces are not permitted for  
5191 use in multi-tiered braced frames.

## 5192 H2.5. Members

### 5193 H2.5a. Basic Requirements

5194 Composite columns and steel or composite braces shall satisfy the  
5195 requirements of Section D1.1 for highly ductile members. Steel or  
5196 composite beams shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.1 for  
5197 moderately ductile members.

5198 **User Note:** In order to satisfy this requirement, the actual width-to-  
5199 thickness ratio of square and rectangular filled composite braces may  
5200 be multiplied by a factor,  $[(0.264 + 0.0082L_c/r)]$ , for  $L_c/r$  between 35  
5201 and 90;  $L_c/r$  being the effective slenderness ratio of the brace.

### 5202 H2.5b. Diagonal Braces

5203 Structural steel and filled composite braces shall satisfy the  
5204 requirements for SCBF of Section F2.5b. The radius of gyration in  
5205 Section F2.5b shall be taken as that of the steel section alone.

5206 **H2.5c. Protected Zones**

5207 The protected zone of C-SCBF shall satisfy Section D1.3 and include  
5208 the following:

- 5209 (a) For braces, the center one-quarter of the brace length and a zone  
5210 adjacent to each connection equal to the brace depth in the plane of  
5211 buckling
- 5212 (b) Elements that connect braces to beams and columns.

5213 **H2.6. Connections**

5214 Design of connections in C-SCBF shall be based on Section D2 and  
5215 the provisions of this section.

5216 **H2.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

5217 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the  
5218 requirements of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- 5219 (a) Groove welds at column splices
- 5220 (b) Welds at the column-to-base plate connections
- 5221 Exception: Welds need not be considered demand  
5222 critical when both of the following conditions are  
5223 satisfied:
- 5224 (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is  
5225 precluded by conditions of restraint, and
- 5226 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations  
5227 including the overstrength seismic load.
- 5228 (c) Welds at beam-to-column connections conforming to Section  
5229 H2.6b(b)

5230 **H2.6b. Beam-to-Column Connections**

5231 Where a brace or gusset plate connects to both members at a beam-to-  
5232 column connection, the connection shall conform to one of the  
5233 following:

- 5234 (a) The connection shall be a simple connection meeting the  
5235 requirements of Specification Section B3.4a where the required  
5236 rotation is taken to be 0.025 rad; or

- (b) Beam-to-column connections shall satisfy the requirements for FR moment connections as specified in Sections D2, G2.6d and G2.6e.

The required flexural strength of the connection shall be determined from analysis and shall be considered in combination with the required strength of the brace connection and beam connection, including the diaphragm collector forces determined using the overstrength seismic load.

### **H2.6c. Brace Connections**

Brace connections shall satisfy the requirement of Section F2.6c, except that the required strength shall be modified to account for the entire composite section in determining the expected brace strength in tension and compression. Applicable  $R_y$  factors shall be used for different elements of the cross section for calculating the expected brace strength. The expected brace flexural strength shall be determined as  $M_{p,exp}$ , where  $M_{p,exp}$  is calculated as specified in Section G2.6d.

### **H2.6d. Column Splices**

In addition to the requirements of Section D2.5, column splices shall comply with the requirements of this section. Where welds are used to make the splice, they shall be complete-joint-penetration groove welds. When column splices are not made with groove welds, they shall have a required flexural strength that is at least equal to the nominal flexural strength,  $M_{pcc}$ , of the smaller composite column. The required shear strength of column web splices shall be at least equal to  $\Sigma M_{pcc}/H$ , where  $\Sigma M_{pcc}$  is the sum of the nominal flexural strengths at the top and bottom ends of the composite column. The nominal flexural strength shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Chapter I with consideration of the required axial strength,  $P_{rc}$ .

## **H3. COMPOSITE ECCENTRICALLY BRACED FRAMES (C-EBF)**

### **H3.1. Scope**

Composite eccentrically braced frames (C-EBF) shall be designed in conformance with this section. Columns shall be encased composite or filled composite. Beams shall be structural steel or composite beams. Links shall be structural steel. Braces shall be structural steel or filled composite members. This section is applicable to braced frames for which one end of each brace intersects a beam at an eccentricity from

the intersection of the centerlines of the beam and an adjacent brace or column.

### **H3.2. Basis of Design**

C-EBF shall satisfy the requirements of Section F3.2, except as modified in this section.

This section is applicable to braced frames for which one end of each brace intersects a beam at an eccentricity from the intersection of the centerlines of the beam and an adjacent brace or column, forming a link that is subject to shear and flexure. Eccentricities less than the beam depth are permitted in the brace connection away from the link if the resulting member and connection forces are addressed in the design and do not change the expected source of inelastic deformation capacity.

C-EBF designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide significant inelastic deformation capacity primarily through shear or flexural yielding in the links.

The available strength of members shall satisfy the requirements in the Specification, except as modified in this section.

### **H3.3. Analysis**

The analysis of C-EBF shall satisfy the analysis requirements of Section F3.3.

### **H3.4. System Requirements**

The system requirements for C-EBF shall satisfy the system requirements of Section F3.4.

### **H3.5. Members**

The member requirements of C-EBF shall satisfy the member requirements of Section F3.5.

### **H3.6. Connections**

The connection requirements of C-EBF shall satisfy the connection requirements of Section F3.6 except as noted in the following.

#### **H3.6a. Beam-to-Column Connections**

Where a brace or gusset plate connects to both members at a beam-to-column connection, the connection shall conform to one of the following:

5316 (a) The connection shall be a simple connection meeting the  
5317 requirements of Specification Section B3.4a where the required  
5318 rotation is taken to be 0.025 rad; or

5319 (b) Beam-to-column connections shall satisfy the requirements for  
5320 fully restrained (FR) moment connections as specified in  
5321 Sections D2, G2.6d and G2.6e.

5322  
5323 The required flexural strength of the connection shall be  
5324 determined from analysis and shall be considered in  
5325 combination with the required strength of the brace connection  
5326 and beam connection, including the diaphragm collector forces  
5327 determined using the overstrength seismic load.  
5328

#### 5329 **H4. COMPOSITE ORDINARY SHEAR WALLS (C-OSW)**

##### 5330 **H4.1. Scope**

5331 Composite ordinary shear walls (C-OSW) shall be designed in  
5332 conformance with this section. This section is applicable to uncoupled  
5333 reinforced concrete shear walls with composite boundary elements,  
5334 and coupled reinforced concrete shear walls, with or without  
5335 composite boundary elements, with structural steel or composite  
5336 coupling beams that connect two or more adjacent walls.

##### 5337 **H4.2. Basis of Design**

5338 C-OSW designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to  
5339 provide limited inelastic deformation capacity through yielding in the  
5340 reinforced concrete walls and the steel or composite elements.

5341 Reinforced concrete walls shall satisfy the requirements of ACI 318  
5342 excluding Chapter 18, except as modified in this section.

##### 5343 **H4.3. Analysis**

5344 Analysis shall satisfy the requirements of Chapter C as modified in  
5345 this section.

5346 (a) Uncracked effective stiffness values for elastic analysis shall be  
5347 assigned in accordance with ACI 318 Chapter 6 for wall piers  
5348 and composite coupling beams.

5349 (b) When concrete-encased shapes function as boundary members,  
5350 the analysis shall be based upon a transformed concrete section  
5351 using elastic material properties.

##### 5352 **H4.4. System Requirements**

In coupled walls, it is permitted to redistribute coupling beam forces vertically to adjacent floors. The shear in any individual coupling beam shall not be reduced by more than 20% of the elastically determined value. The sum of the coupling beam shear resistance over the height of the building shall be greater than or equal to the sum of the elastically determined values.

#### **H4.5. Members**

##### **H4.5a. Boundary Members**

Boundary members shall satisfy the following requirements:

- (a) The required axial strength of the boundary member shall be determined assuming that the shear forces are carried by the reinforced concrete wall and the entire gravity and overturning forces are carried by the boundary members in conjunction with the shear wall.
- (b) When the concrete-encased structural steel boundary member qualifies as a composite column as defined in Specification Chapter I, it shall be designed as a composite column to satisfy the requirements of Chapter I of the Specification.
- (c) Headed studs or welded reinforcement anchors shall be provided to transfer required shear strengths between the structural steel boundary members and reinforced concrete walls. Headed studs, if used, shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Chapter I. Welded reinforcement anchors, if used, shall satisfy the requirements of Structural Welding Code—Reinforcing Steel (AWS D1.4/D1.4M).

##### **H4.5b. Coupling Beams**

###### **1. Structural Steel Coupling Beams**

Structural steel coupling beams that are used between adjacent reinforced concrete walls shall satisfy the requirements of the Specification and this section. The following requirements apply to wide flange steel coupling beams.

- (a) Steel coupling beams shall be designed in accordance with Chapters F and G of the Specification.
- (b) The available connection shear strength,  $\phi V_{n, \text{connection}}$ , shall be computed from Equations H4-1 and H4-1M, with  $\phi = 0.90$ .

$$V_{n,connection} = 1.54\sqrt{f'_c} \left( \frac{b_w}{b_f} \right)^{0.66} \beta_1 b_f L_e \left[ \frac{0.58 - 0.22\beta_1}{0.88 + \frac{g}{2L_e}} \right] \quad (H4-1)$$

$$V_{n,connection} = 4.04\sqrt{f'_c} \left( \frac{b_w}{b_f} \right)^{0.66} \beta_1 b_f L_e \left[ \frac{0.58 - 0.22\beta_1}{0.88 + \frac{g}{2L_e}} \right] \quad (S.I.) \quad (H4-1M)$$

where

$L_e$  = embedment length of coupling beam measured from the face of the wall, in. (mm)

$b_w$  = thickness of wall pier, in. (mm)

$b_f$  = beam flange width, in. (mm)

$f'_c$  = concrete compressive strength, ksi (MPa)

$\beta_1$  = factor relating depth of equivalent rectangular compressive stress block to neutral axis depth, as defined in ACI 318

$g$  = clear span of coupling beam, in. (mm)

- (c) Vertical wall reinforcement with nominal axial strength equal to the required shear strength,  $V_n$ , of the coupling beam shall be placed over the embedment length of the beam with two-thirds of the steel located over the first half of the embedment length. This wall reinforcement shall extend a distance of at least one tension development length above and below the flanges of the coupling beam. It is permitted to use vertical reinforcement placed for other purposes, such as for vertical boundary members, as part of the required vertical reinforcement.

## 2. Composite Coupling Beams

Encased composite sections serving as coupling beams shall satisfy the following requirements:

- (a) Coupling beams shall have an embedment length into the reinforced concrete wall that is sufficient to develop the required shear strength, where the connection strength is calculated with Equation H4-1 or H4-1M.

The available shear strength of the composite beam,  $\phi V_{n,comp}$ , is computed from Equation H4-2 and H4-2M, with  $\phi = 0.90$ .

$$V_{n,comp} = V_p + \left( 0.0632 \sqrt{f_c'} b_{wc} d_c + \frac{A_{sr} F_{ysr} d_c}{s} \right) \quad (H4-2)$$

$$V_{n,comp} = V_p + \left( 0.166 \sqrt{f_c'} b_{wc} d_c + \frac{A_{sr} F_{ysr} d_c}{s} \right) \text{ (S.I.)} \quad (H4-2M)$$

where

$A_{sr}$  = area of transverse reinforcement, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

$F_{ysr}$  = specified minimum yield stress of transverse reinforcement, ksi (MPa)

$V_p$  =  $0.6F_y A_w$ , kips (N)

$A_w$  = area of steel beam web, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

$b_{wc}$  = width of concrete encasement, in. (mm)

$d_c$  = effective depth of concrete encasement, in. (mm)

$s$  = spacing of transverse reinforcement, in. (mm)

#### H4.5c. Protected Zones

There are no designated protected zones.

#### H4.6. Connections

There are no additional requirements beyond Section H4.5.

#### H4.6a. Demand Critical Welds

There are no requirements specific to this system.

### H5. COMPOSITE SPECIAL SHEAR WALLS (C-SSW)

#### H5.1. Scope

Composite special shear walls (C-SSW) shall be designed in conformance with this section. This section is applicable when reinforced concrete walls are composite with structural steel elements, including structural steel or composite sections acting as boundary members for the walls and structural steel or composite coupling beams that connect two or more adjacent reinforced concrete walls.

#### H5.2. Basis of Design

C-SSW designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide significant inelastic deformation capacity through yielding in the reinforced concrete walls and the steel or composite elements. Reinforced concrete wall elements shall be designed to provide inelastic deformations at the design story drift consistent with ACI 318 including Chapter 18. Structural steel and composite coupling beams

shall be designed to provide inelastic deformations at the design story drift through yielding in flexure or shear. Coupling beam connections and the design of the walls shall be designed to account for the expected strength including strain hardening in the coupling beams. Structural steel and composite boundary elements shall be designed to provide inelastic deformations at the design story drift through yielding due to axial force.

C-SSW systems shall satisfy the requirements of Section H4 and the shear wall requirements of ACI 318 including Chapter 18, except as modified in this section.

**User Note:** Steel coupling beams can be proportioned to be shear-critical or flexural-critical. Coupling beams with lengths  $g \leq 1.6M_p/V_p$  can be assumed to be shear-critical, where  $g$ ,  $M_p$ , and  $V_p$  are defined in Section H4.5b(1). Coupling beams with lengths  $g \geq 2.6M_p/V_p$  may be considered to be flexure-critical. Coupling beam lengths between these two values are considered to yield in flexure and shear simultaneously.

### H5.3. Analysis

Analysis requirements of Section H4.3 shall be met with the following exceptions:

- (a) Cracked effective stiffness values for elastic analysis shall be assigned in accordance with ACI 318 Chapter 6 practice for wall piers and composite coupling beams.
- (b) Effects of shear distortion of the steel coupling beam shall be taken into account.

### H5.4. System Requirements

In addition to the system requirements of Section H4.4, the following shall be satisfied:

- (a) In coupled walls, coupling beams shall yield over the height of the structure followed by yielding at the base of the wall piers.
- (b) In coupled walls, the axial design strength of the wall at the balanced condition,  $P_b$ , shall equal or exceed the total required compressive axial strength in a wall pier, computed as the sum of the required strengths attributed to the walls from the gravity load components of the lateral load combination plus the sum of the expected beam shear strengths increased by a factor of 1.1 to reflect the effects of strain hardening of all the coupling beams framing into the walls.

5496 **H5.5. Members**

5497 **H5.5a. Ductile Elements**

5498 Welding on steel coupling beams is permitted for attachment of  
5499 stiffeners, as required in Section F3.5b.4.

5500 **H5.5b. Boundary Members**

5501 Unencased structural steel columns shall satisfy the requirements of  
5502 Section D1.1 for highly ductile members and Section H4.5a(a).

5503 In addition to the requirements of Sections H4.3(b) and H4.5a(b), the  
5504 requirements in this section shall apply to walls with concrete-encased  
5505 structural steel boundary members. Concrete-encased structural steel  
5506 boundary members that qualify as composite columns in Specification  
5507 Chapter I shall meet the highly ductile member requirements of  
5508 Section D1.4b(b). Otherwise, such members shall be designed as  
5509 composite compression members to satisfy the requirements of ACI  
5510 318 including the special seismic requirements for boundary members  
5511 in ACI 318 Section 18.10.6. Transverse reinforcement for confinement  
5512 of the composite boundary member shall extend a distance of  $2h$  into  
5513 the wall, where  $h$  is the overall depth of the boundary member in the  
5514 plane of the wall.

5515 Headed studs or welded reinforcing anchors shall be provided as  
5516 specified in Section H4.5a(c).

5517 Vertical wall reinforcement as specified in Section H4.5b.1(d) shall be  
5518 confined by transverse reinforcement that meets the requirements for  
5519 boundary members of ACI 318 Section 18.10.6.

5520 **H5.5c. Steel Coupling Beams**

5521 The design and detailing of steel coupling beams shall satisfy the  
5522 following:

5523 (a) The embedment length,  $L_e$ , of the coupling beam shall be  
5524 computed from Equations H5-1 and H5-1M.

$$V_n = 1.54\sqrt{f'_c} \left( \frac{b_w}{b_f} \right)^{0.66} \beta_1 b_f L_e \left[ \frac{0.58 - 0.22\beta_1}{0.88 + \frac{g}{2L_e}} \right] \quad (\text{H5-1})$$

$$V_n = 4.04\sqrt{f'_c} \left( \frac{b_w}{b_f} \right)^{0.66} \beta_1 b_f L_e \left[ \frac{0.58 - 0.22\beta_1}{0.88 + \frac{g}{2L_e}} \right] \quad (\text{H5-1M})$$

where

$L_e$  = coupling beam embedment length considered to begin inside the first layer of confining reinforcement, nearest to the edge of the wall, in the wall boundary member, in, (mm)

$g$  = clear span of the coupling beam plus the wall concrete cover at each end of the beam, in, (mm)

$V_n$  = expected beam shear strength computed from Equation H5-2, kips (N)

$$= \frac{2(1.1R_y)M_p}{g} \leq (1.1R_y)V_p \quad (\text{H5-2})$$

where

$A_{tw}$  = area of steel beam web, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>).

$M_p$  =  $F_y Z$ , kip-in. (N-mm)

$V_n$  = expected shear strength of a steel coupling beam, kips (N)

$V_p$  =  $0.6F_y A_{tw}$ , kips (N)

- (b) Structural steel coupling beams shall satisfy the requirements of Section F3.5b, except that for built-up cross sections, the flange-to-web welds are permitted to be made with two-sided fillet, partial-joint-penetration, or complete-joint-penetration groove welds that develop the expected strength of the beam. When required in Section F3.5b.4, the coupling beam rotation shall be assumed as a 0.08 rad link rotation unless a smaller value is justified by rational analysis of the inelastic deformations that are expected under the design story drift. Face bearing plates shall be provided on both sides of the coupling beams at the face of the reinforced concrete wall. These plates shall meet the detailing requirements of Section F3.5b.4.

- (c) Steel coupling beams shall comply with the requirements of Section D1.1 for highly ductile members. Flanges of coupling beams with I-shaped sections with  $g \leq 1.6M_p/V_p$  are permitted to satisfy the requirements for moderately ductile members.
- (d) Embedded steel members shall be provided with two regions of vertical transfer reinforcement attached to both the top and bottom flanges of the embedded member. The first region shall be located to coincide with the location of longitudinal wall reinforcing bars closest to the face of the wall. The second shall be placed a distance no less than  $d/2$  from the termination of the embedment length. All transfer reinforcement bars shall be fully developed where they engage the coupling beam flanges. It is permitted to use straight, hooked or mechanical anchorage to provide development. It is permitted to use mechanical couplers welded to the flanges to attach the vertical transfer bars. The area of vertical transfer reinforcement required is computed by Equation H5-1:

$$A_{tb} \geq 0.03 f'_c L_e b_f / F_{ysr} \quad (H5-1)$$

where

$A_{tb}$  = area of transfer reinforcement required in each of the first and second regions attached to each of the top and bottom flanges, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

$F_{ysr}$  = specified minimum yield stress of transfer reinforcement, ksi (MPa)

$L_e$  = embedment length, in. (mm)

$b_f$  = beam flange width, in. (mm)

$f'_c$  = concrete compressive strength, ksi (MPa)

The area of vertical transfer reinforcement shall not exceed that computed by Equation H5-2:

$$\sum A_{tb} < 0.08 L_e b_w - A_{sr} \quad (H5-2)$$

where

$\sum A_{tb}$  = total area of transfer reinforcement provided in both the first and second regions attached to either the top or bottom flange, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

$A_{sr}$  = area of longitudinal wall reinforcement provided over the embedment length,  $L_e$ , in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)

$b_w$  = width of wall, in. (mm)

#### H5.5d. Composite Coupling Beams

Encased composite sections serving as coupling beams shall satisfy the

2016 Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

Draft dated December 18, 2015

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION

requirements of Section H5.5c except the requirements of Section F3.5b.4 need not be met, and Equation H5-3 shall be used instead of Equation H4-2. For all encased composite coupling beams, the limiting expected shear strength,  $V_{comp}$ , is:

$$V_{comp} = 1.1R_y V_p + 0.08\sqrt{R_c f'_c} b_{wc} d_c + \frac{1.33R_{yr} A_s F_{ysr} d_c}{s} \quad (H5-3)$$

$$V_{comp} = 1.1R_y V_p + 0.21\sqrt{R_c f'_c} b_{wc} d_c + \frac{1.33R_{yr} A_s F_{ysr} d_c}{s} \quad (S.I.) \quad (H5-3M)$$

Where

- $F_{ysr}$  = yield stress of transverse reinforcement, ksi (MPa)
- $R_c$  = factor to account for expected strength of concrete = 1.5
- $R_{yr}$  = ratio of the expected yield stress of the transverse reinforcement material to the specified minimum yield stress,  $F_{ysr}$

### H5.5e. Protected Zones

The clear span of the coupling beam between the faces of the shear walls shall be designated as a protected zone, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section D1.3. Attachment of stiffeners and face bearing plates as required by Section H5.5c(b) shall be permitted.

### H5.6. Connections

#### H5.6a. Demand Critical Welds

The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the requirements of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- (a) Groove welds at column splices
  - (b) Welds at the column-to-base plate connections
- Exception: Welds need not be considered demand critical when both of the following conditions are satisfied:
- (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is precluded by conditions of restraint, and
  - (2) There is no net tension under load combinations including the overstrength seismic load.

**H5.6b. Column Splices**

Column splices shall be designed following the requirements of Section G2.6f.

**H6. COMPOSITE PLATE SHEAR WALLS – CONCRETE ENCASED (C-PSW/CE)****H6.1. Scope**

Composite plate shear walls-concrete encased (C-PSW/CE) shall be designed in conformance with this section. C-PSW/CE consist of steel plates with reinforced concrete encasement on one or both sides of the plate and structural steel or composite boundary members.

**H6.2. Basis of Design**

C-PSW/CE designed in accordance with these provisions are expected to provide significant inelastic deformation capacity through yielding in the plate webs. The horizontal boundary elements (HBEs) and vertical boundary elements (VBEs) adjacent to the composite webs shall be designed to remain essentially elastic under the maximum forces that can be generated by the fully yielded steel webs along with the reinforced concrete webs after the steel web has fully yielded, except that plastic hinging at the ends of HBEs is permitted.

**H6.3. Analysis****H6.3a. Webs**

The analysis shall account for openings in the web.

**H6.3b. Other Members and Connections**

Columns, beams and connections in C-PSW/CE shall be designed to resist seismic forces determined from an analysis that includes the expected strength of the steel webs in shear,  $0.6R_yF_yA_{sp}$ , where  $A_{sp}$  is the horizontal area of the stiffened steel plate, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>), and any reinforced concrete portions of the wall active at the design story drift. The VBEs are permitted to yield at the base.

**H6.4. System Requirements****H6.4a. Steel Plate Thickness**

Steel plates with thickness less than 3/8 in. (9.5 mm) are not permitted.

**H6.4b. Stiffness of Vertical Boundary Elements**

The VBEs shall satisfy the requirements of Section F5.4a.

5671 **H6.4c. HBE-to-VBE Connection Moment Ratio**

5672 The beam-column moment ratio shall satisfy the requirements of  
5673 Section F5.4b.

5674 **H6.4d. Bracing**

5675 HBE shall be braced to satisfy the requirements for moderately ductile  
5676 members.

5677 **H6.4e. Openings in Webs**

5678 Boundary members shall be provided around openings in shear wall  
5679 webs as required by analysis.

5680 **H6.5. Members**

5681 **H6.5a. Basic Requirements**

5682 Steel and composite HBE and VBE shall satisfy the requirements of  
5683 Section D1.1 for highly ductile members.

5684 **H6.5b. Webs**

5685 The design shear strength,  $\phi V_n$ , or the allowable shear strength,  $V_n/\Omega$ ,  
5686 for the limit state of shear yielding with a composite plate conforming  
5687 to Section H6.5c shall be taken as:

$$5688 \quad V_n = 0.6A_{sp}F_y \quad (H6-1)$$

$$5689 \quad \phi = 0.90 \text{ (LRFD)} \quad \Omega = 1.67 \text{ (ASD)}$$

5690 where

5691  $F_y$  = specified minimum yield stress of the plate, ksi (MPa)

5692  $V_n$  = nominal shear strength of the steel plate, kips (N)

5693 The available shear strength of C-PSW/CE with a plate that does not  
5694 meet the stiffening requirements in Section H6.5c shall be based upon  
5695 the strength of the plate as given in Section F5.5 and shall satisfy the  
5696 requirements of Specification Sections G2 and G3.

5697 **H6.5c. Concrete Stiffening Elements**

5698 The steel plate shall be stiffened by encasement or attachment to a  
5699 reinforced concrete panel. Conformance to this requirement shall be  
5700 demonstrated with an elastic plate buckling analysis showing that the  
5701 composite wall is able to resist a nominal shear force equal to  $V_n$ , as  
5702 determined in Section H6.5b.

5703 The concrete thickness shall be a minimum of 4 in. (100 mm) on each

5704 side when concrete is provided on both sides of the steel plate and 8 in.  
5705 (200 mm) when concrete is provided on one side of the steel plate.  
5706 Steel headed stud anchors or other mechanical connectors shall be  
5707 provided to prevent local buckling and separation of the plate and  
5708 reinforced concrete. Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be  
5709 provided in the concrete encasement to meet or exceed the  
5710 requirements in ACI 318 Section 11.6 and 11.7. The reinforcement  
5711 ratio in both directions shall not be less than 0.0025. The maximum  
5712 spacing between bars shall not exceed 18 in. (450 mm).

#### 5713 **H6.5d. Boundary Members**

5714 Structural steel and composite boundary members shall be designed to  
5715 resist the expected shear strength of steel plate and any reinforced  
5716 concrete portions of the wall active at the design story drift.  
5717 Composite and reinforced concrete boundary members shall also  
5718 satisfy the requirements of Section H5.5b. Steel boundary members  
5719 shall also satisfy the requirements of Section F5.

#### 5720 **H6.5e. Protected Zones**

5721 There are no designated protected zones.

#### 5722 **H6.6. Connections**

##### 5723 **H6.6a. Demand Critical Welds**

5724 The following welds are demand critical welds, and shall satisfy the  
5725 requirements of Section A3.4b and I2.3:

- 5726 (a) Groove welds at column splices
- 5727 (b) Welds at the column-to-base plate connections
- 5728 Exception: Welds need not be considered demand  
5729 critical when both of the following conditions are  
5730 satisfied:
- 5731 (1) Column hinging at, or near, the base plate is  
5732 precluded by conditions of restraint, and
- 5733 (2) There is no net tension under load combinations  
5734 including the overstrength seismic load.
- 5735
- 5736 (c) Welds at HBE-to-VBE connections

##### 5737 **H6.6b. HBE-to-VBE Connections**

5738 HBE-to-VBE connections shall satisfy the requirements of Section  
5739 F5.6b.

**H6.6c. Connections of Steel Plate to Boundary Elements**

The steel plate shall be continuously welded or bolted on all edges to the structural steel framing and/or steel boundary members, or the steel component of the composite boundary members. Welds and/or slip-critical high-strength bolts required to develop the nominal shear strength of the plate shall be provided.

**H6.6d. Connections of Steel Plate to Reinforced Concrete Panel**

The steel anchors between the steel plate and the reinforced concrete panel shall be designed to prevent its overall buckling. Steel anchors shall be designed to satisfy the following conditions:

**1. Tension in the Connector**

The steel anchor shall be designed to resist the tension force resulting from inelastic local buckling of the steel plate.

**2. Shear in the Connector**

The steel anchors collectively shall be designed to transfer the expected strength in shear of the steel plate or reinforced concrete panel, whichever is smaller.

**H6.6e. Column Splices**

In addition to the requirements of Section D2.5, column splices shall comply with the requirements of this section. Where welds are used to make the splice, they shall be complete-joint-penetration groove welds. When column splices are not made with groove welds, they shall have a required flexural strength that is at least equal to the nominal flexural strength,  $M_{pcc}$ , of the smaller composite column. The required shear strength of column web splices shall be at least equal to  $\Sigma M_{pcc}/H$ , where  $\Sigma M_{pcc}$  is the sum of the nominal flexural strengths at the top and bottom ends of the composite column. For composite columns, the nominal flexural strength shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Chapter I with consideration of the required axial strength,  $P_{rc}$ .

**H7. COMPOSITE PLATE SHEAR WALLS—CONCRETE FILLED (C-PSW/CF)****H7.1. Scope**

Composite plate shear walls-concrete filled (C-PSW/CF) shall be designed in conformance with this section. This section is applicable to composite plate shear walls that consist of two planar steel web

plates with concrete fill between the plates, with or without boundary elements. Composite action between the plates and concrete fill shall be achieved using either tie bars or a combination of tie bars and shear studs. The two steel web plates shall be of equal thickness and shall be placed at a constant distance from each other and connected using tie bars. When boundary members are included, they shall be either a half circular section of diameter equal to the distance between the two web plates or a circular concrete-filled steel tube.

## H7.2. Basis of Design

C-PSW/CF with boundary elements, designed in accordance with these provisions, are expected to provide significant inelastic deformation capacity through developing plastic moment strength of the composite C-PSW/CF cross section, by yielding of the entire skin plate and the concrete attaining its compressive strength. The cross section shall be detailed such that it is able to attain its plastic moment strength. Shear yielding of the steel web skin plates shall not be the governing mechanism.

C-PSW/CF without boundary elements designed in accordance to these provisions are expected to provide inelastic deformation capacity by developing yield moment strength of the composite C-PSW/CF cross section, by flexural tension yielding of the steel plates. The walls shall be detailed such that flexural compression yielding occurs before local buckling of the steel plates.

## H7.3. Analysis

Analysis shall satisfy the following:

- (a) Effective flexural stiffness of the wall shall be calculated per Specification Equation I2-12, with  $C_3$  taken equal to 0.40.
- (b) The shear stiffness of the wall shall be calculated using the shear stiffness of the composite cross section.

## H7.4. System Requirements

### H7.4a. Steel Web Plate of C-PSW/CF with Boundary Elements

The maximum spacing of tie bars in vertical and horizontal directions,  $w_1$ :

$$w_1 = 1.8t \sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}} \quad (H7-1)$$

5820 where

5821  $t$  = thickness of the steel web plate, in. (mm)

5822  
5823 When tie bars are welded with the web plate, the thickness of the plate  
5824 shall develop the tension strength of the tie bars.

5825  
5826 **H7.4b. Steel Plate of C-PSW/CF without Boundary Elements**

5827  
5828 The maximum spacing of tie bars in vertical and horizontal directions,  
5829  $w_1$ :

$$5830 \quad w_1 = 1.0t \sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}} \quad (H7-2)$$

5831 where

5832  $t$  = thickness of the steel web plate, in. (mm)

5833  
5834 **H7.4c. Half Circular or Full Circular End of C-PSW/CF with Boundary**  
5835 **Elements**

5836  
5837 The  $D/t_{HSS}$  ratio for the circular part of the C-PSW/CF cross section  
5838 shall conform to:

$$5839 \quad \frac{D}{t_{HSS}} \leq 0.044 \frac{E}{F_y} \quad (H7-3)$$

5840 where

5841  $D$  = outside diameter of round HSS, in. (mm)

5842  $t_{HSS}$  = thickness of HSS, in. (mm)

5843  
5844 **H7.4d. Spacing of Tie Bars in C-PSW/CF with or without Boundary**  
5845 **Elements**

5846  
5847 Tie bars shall be distributed in both vertical and horizontal directions,  
5848 as specified in Equations H7-1 and H7-2.

5849  
5850 **H7.4e. Tie Bar Diameter in C-PSW/CF with or without Boundary**  
5851 **Elements**

5852  
5853 Tie bars shall be designed to elastically resist the tension force,  $T_{req}$ ,  
5854 equal to:

$$5855 \quad T_{req} = T_1 + T_2 \quad (H7-4)$$

5856  $T_1$  is the tension force resulting from the locally buckled web plates  
5857 developing plastic hinges on horizontal yield lines along the tie bars

and at mid-vertical distance between tie-bars, and is determined as follows:

$$T_1 = 2 \left( \frac{w_2}{w_1} \right) t_s^2 F_{y, \text{plate}} \quad (\text{H7-5})$$

where

$t_s$  = the thickness of steel web plate provided, in. (mm)

$w_1, w_2$  = vertical and horizontal spacing of tie bars, in. (mm), respectively

$T_2$  is the tension force that develops to prevent splitting of the concrete element on a plane parallel to the steel plate.

$$T_2 = \left( \frac{t_s F_{y, \text{plate}} t_w}{4} \right) \left( \frac{w_2}{w_1} \right) \left[ \frac{6}{18 \left( \frac{t_w}{w_{\min}} \right)^2 + 1} \right] \quad (\text{H7-6})$$

where

$t_w$  = total thickness of wall, in. (mm)

$w_{\min}$  = minimum of  $w_1$  and  $w_2$ , in. (mm)

#### **H7.4f. Connection between Tie Bars and Steel Plates**

Connection of the tie bars to the steel plate shall be able to develop the full tension strength of the tie bar.

#### **H7.4g. Connection between C-PSW/CF Steel Components**

Welds between the steel web plate and the half-circular or full-circular ends of the cross section shall be complete-joint-penetration groove welds.

#### **H7.4h. C-PSW/CF and Foundation Connection**

The connection between C-PSW/CF and the foundation shall be detailed such that the connection is able to transfer the base shear force and the axial force acting together with the overturning moment, corresponding to 1.1 times the plastic composite flexural strength of the wall, where the plastic flexural composite strength is obtained by the plastic stress distribution method described in Specification Section I1.2a assuming that the steel components have reached a stress equal to the expected yield strength,  $R_y F_y$ , in either tension or compression and that concrete components in compression due to axial force and flexure have reached a stress of  $f'_c$ .

5896 **H7.5. Members**5897 **H7.5a Flexural Strength**

5898 The nominal plastic moment strength of the C-PSW/CF with boundary  
 5899 elements shall be calculated considering that all the concrete in  
 5900 compression has reached its specified compressive strength,  $f_c'$ , and  
 5901 that the steel in tension and compression has reached its specified  
 5902 minimum yield strength,  $F_y$ , as determined based on the location of the  
 5903 plastic neutral axis.

5904 The nominal moment strength of the C-PSW/CF without boundary  
 5905 elements shall be calculated as the yield moment,  $M_y$ , corresponding to  
 5906 yielding of the steel plate in flexural tension and first yield in flexural  
 5907 compression. The strength at first yield shall be calculated assuming a  
 5908 linear elastic stress distribution with maximum concrete compressive  
 5909 stress limited to  $0.7 f_c'$  and maximum steel stress limited to  $F_y$ .

5910 **User Note:** The definition and calculation of the yield moment,  $M_y$ , for  
 5911 C-PSW/CF without boundary elements is very similar to the definition  
 5912 and calculation of yield moment,  $M_y$ , for noncompact filled composite  
 5913 members in Specification Section I3.4b(b).

5914 **H7.5b Shear Strength**

5915 The available shear strength of C-PSW/CF shall be determined as  
 5916 follows:

5917 (a) The design shear strength,  $\phi V_{ni}$ , or the allowable shear strength,  
 5918  $V_{ni}/\Omega$ , of the C-PSW/CF with boundary elements shall be  
 5919 determined as follows:  
 5920

$$5921 V_{ni} = \kappa F_y A_{sw} \quad (H7-7)$$

$$5922 \phi_v = 0.90 \text{ (LRFD)} \quad \Omega_v = 1.67 \text{ (ASD)}$$

5923 where  
 5924

$$5925 \kappa = 1.11 - 5.16 \bar{\rho} \leq 1.0 \quad (H7-8)$$

$\bar{\rho}$  = strength adjusted reinforcement ratio

$$5926 = \frac{A_{sw} F_{yw}}{A_{cw} \sqrt{1,000 f_c'}} \quad (H7-9)$$

$$5927 = \frac{1}{12} \frac{A_{sw} F_{yw}}{A_{cw} \sqrt{f_c'}} \quad (H7-9M)$$

5928  $F_{yw}$  = specified minimum yield stress of web skin plates,  
5929 ksi (MPa)  
5930  $f'_c$  = specified compressive strength of concrete, ksi  
5931 (MPa)  
5932  $A_{sw}$  = area of steel web plates, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)  
5933  $A_{cw}$  = area of concrete between web plates, in.<sup>2</sup> (mm<sup>2</sup>)  
5934

5935 **User Note:** For most cases,  $0.9 \leq \kappa \leq 1.0$ .

5936 (b) The nominal shear strength of the C-PSW/CF without  
5937 boundary elements shall be calculated for the steel plates alone,  
5938 in accordance with Section D1.4c.

5939

**CHAPTER I****FABRICATION AND ERECTION**

This chapter addresses requirements for fabrication and erection.

**User Note:** All requirements of Specification Chapter M also apply, unless specifically modified by these Provisions.

The chapter is organized as follows:

I1. Shop and Erection Drawings

I2. Fabrication and Erection

**I1. SHOP AND ERECTION DRAWINGS****I1.1. Shop Drawings for Steel Construction**

Shop drawings shall indicate the work to be performed, and include items required by the Specification, the AISC Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges, the applicable building code, the requirements of Sections A4.1 and A4.2, and the following, as applicable:

- (a) Locations of pretensioned bolts
- (b) Locations of Class A, or higher, faying surfaces
- (c) Gusset plates drawn to scale when they are designed to accommodate inelastic rotation
- (d) Weld access hole dimensions, surface profile and finish requirements
- (e) Nondestructive testing (NDT) where performed by the fabricator

**I1.2. Erection Drawings for Steel Construction**

Erection drawings shall indicate the work to be performed, and include items required by the Specification, the AISC Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges, the applicable building code, the requirements of Sections A4.1 and A4.2, and the following, as applicable:

- (a) Locations of pretensioned bolts
- (b) Those joints or groups of joints in which a specific assembly order, welding sequence, welding technique or other special precautions are required

### I1.3. Shop and Erection Drawings for Composite Construction

Shop drawings and erection drawings for the steel components of composite steel-concrete construction shall satisfy the requirements of Sections I1.1 and I1.2. The shop drawings and erection drawings shall also satisfy the requirements of Section A4.3.

**User Note:** For reinforced concrete and composite steel-concrete construction, the provisions of ACI 315 Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement and ACI 315-R Manual of Engineering and Placing Drawings for Reinforced Concrete Structures apply.

## I2. FABRICATION AND ERECTION

### I2.1. Protected Zone

A protected zone designated by these Provisions or ANSI/AISC 358 shall comply with the following requirements:

- (a) Within the protected zone, holes, tack welds, erection aids, air-arc gouging, and unspecified thermal cutting from fabrication or erection operations shall be repaired as required by the engineer of record.
- (b) Steel headed stud anchors shall not be placed on beam flanges within the protected zone.
- (c) Arc spot welds as required to attach decking are permitted.
- (d) Decking attachments that penetrate the beam flange shall not be placed on beam flanges within the protected zone, except power-actuated fasteners up to 0.18 in. diameter are permitted.
- (e) Welded, bolted, or screwed attachments or power-actuated fasteners for perimeter edge angles, exterior facades, partitions, duct work, piping or other construction shall not be placed within the protected zone.

Exception: Other attachments are permitted where designated or approved by the engineer of record. See Section D1.3.

**User Note:** AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 6.15 contains requirements for weld removal and the repair of gouges and notches in the protected zone.

**I2.2. Bolted Joints**

Bolted joints shall satisfy the requirements of Section D2.2.

**I2.3. Welded Joints**

Welding and welded connections shall be in accordance with Structural Welding Code—Steel (AWS D1.1/D1.1M), hereafter referred to as AWS D1.1/D1.1M, and AWS D1.8/D1.8M.

Welding procedure specifications (WPSs) shall be approved by the engineer of record.

Weld tabs shall be in accordance with AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 6.10, except at the outboard ends of continuity-plate-to-column welds, weld tabs and weld metal need not be removed closer than  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. (6 mm) from the continuity plate edge.

AWS D1.8/D1.8M clauses relating to fabrication shall apply equally to shop fabrication welding and to field erection welding.

**User Note:** AWS D1.8/D1.8M was specifically written to provide additional requirements for the welding of seismic force resisting systems, and has been coordinated wherever possible with these Provisions. AWS D1.8/D1.8M requirements related to fabrication and erection are organized as follows, including normative (mandatory) annexes:

- (a) General Requirements
- (b) Reference Documents
- (c) Definitions
- (d) Welded Connection Details
- (e) Welder Qualification
- (f) Fabrication
- Annex A. WPS Heat Input Envelope Testing of Filler Metals for Demand Critical Welds
- Annex B. Intermix CVN Testing of Filler Metal Combinations (where one of the filler metals is FCAW-S)
- Annex C. Supplemental Welder Qualification for Restricted Access Welding
- Annex D. Supplemental Testing for Extended Exposure Limits for FCAW Filler Metals

AWS D1.8/D1.8M requires the complete removal of all weld tab material, leaving only base metal and weld metal at the edge of the joint. This is to remove any weld discontinuities at the weld ends, as

well as facilitate magnetic particle testing (MT) of this area. At continuity plates, these Provisions permit a limited amount of weld tab material to remain because of the reduced strains at continuity plates, and any remaining weld discontinuities in this weld end region would likely be of little significance. Also, weld tab removal sites at continuity plates are not subjected to MT.

AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 6 is entitled “Fabrication,” but the intent of AWS is that all provisions of AWS D1.8/D1.8M apply equally to fabrication and erection activities as described in the Specification and in these Provisions.

#### **I2.4. Continuity Plates and Stiffeners**

Corners of continuity plates and stiffeners placed in the webs of rolled shapes shall be detailed in accordance with AWS D1.8 clause 4.1.

**CHAPTER J****QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE**

This chapter addresses requirements for quality control and quality assurance.

**User Note:** All requirements of Specification Chapter N also apply, unless specifically modified by these Provisions.

The chapter is organized as follows:

- J1. Scope
- J2. Fabricator and Erector Documents
- J3. Quality Assurance Agency Documents
- J4. Inspection and Nondestructive Testing Personnel
- J5. Inspection Tasks
- J6. Welding Inspection and Nondestructive Testing
- J7. Inspection of High-Strength Bolting
- J8. Other Steel Structure Inspections
- J9. Inspection of Composite Structures
- J10. Inspection of Piling

**J1. SCOPE**

Quality Control (QC) as specified in this chapter shall be provided by the fabricator, erector or other responsible contractor as applicable. Quality Assurance (QA) as specified in this chapter shall be provided by others when required by the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ), applicable building code (ABC), purchaser, owner or engineer of record (EOR). Nondestructive testing (NDT) shall be performed by the agency or firm responsible for Quality Assurance, except as permitted in accordance with Specification Section N7.

**User Note:** The quality assurance plan of this section is considered adequate and effective for most seismic force resisting systems and should be used without modification. The quality assurance plan is intended to ensure that the seismic force resisting system is significantly free of defects that would greatly reduce the ductility of the system. There may be cases (for example, nonredundant major transfer members, or where work is performed in a location that is difficult to access) where supplemental testing might be advisable. Additionally, where the fabricator's or erector's quality control program has demonstrated the capability to perform some tasks this plan has assigned to quality assurance, modification of the plan could be considered.

**J2. FABRICATOR AND ERECTOR DOCUMENTS****J2.1. Documents to be Submitted for Steel Construction**

In addition to the requirements of Specification Section N3.1, the following documents shall be submitted for review by the EOR or the EOR's designee, prior to fabrication or erection of the affected work, as applicable:

- (a) Welding procedure specifications (WPS)
- (b) Copies of the manufacturer's typical certificate of conformance for all electrodes, fluxes and shielding gasses to be used
- (c) For demand critical welds, applicable manufacturer's certifications that the filler metal meets the supplemental notch toughness requirements, as applicable. When the filler metal manufacturer does not supply such supplemental certifications, the fabricator or erector, as applicable, shall have the necessary testing performed and provide the applicable test reports
- (d) Manufacturer's product data sheets or catalog data for SMAW, FCAW and GMAW composite (cored) filler metals to be used
- (e) Bolt installation procedures
- (d) Specific assembly order, welding sequence, welding technique, or other special precautions for joints or groups of joints where such items are designated to be submitted to the engineer of record

**J2.2. Documents to be Available for Review for Steel Construction**

Additional documents as required by the EOR in the contract documents shall be available by the fabricator and erector for review by the EOR or the EOR's designee prior to fabrication or erection, as applicable.

The fabricator and erector shall retain their document(s) for at least one year after substantial completion of construction.

**J2.3. Documents to be Submitted for Composite Construction**

The following documents shall be submitted by the responsible

contractor for review by the EOR or the EOR's designee, prior to concrete production or placement, as applicable:

- (a) Concrete mix design and test reports for the mix design
- (b) Reinforcing steel shop drawings
- (c) Concrete placement sequences, techniques and restriction

#### **J2.4. Documents to be Available for Review for Composite Construction**

The following documents shall be available from the responsible contractor for review by the EOR or the EOR's designee prior to fabrication or erection, as applicable, unless specified to be submitted:

- (a) Material test reports for reinforcing steel
- (b) Inspection procedures
- (c) Nonconformance procedure
- (d) Material control procedure
- (e) Welder performance qualification records (WPQR) as required by AWS D1.4/D1.4M
- (f) QC Inspector qualifications

The responsible contractor shall retain their document(s) for at least one year after substantial completion of construction.

#### **J3. QUALITY ASSURANCE AGENCY DOCUMENTS**

The agency responsible for quality assurance shall submit the following documents to the authority having jurisdiction, the EOR, and the owner or owner's designee:

- (a) QA agency's written practices for the monitoring and control of the agency's operations. The written practice shall include:
  - (1) The agency's procedures for the selection and administration of inspection personnel, describing the training, experience and examination requirements for qualification and certification of inspection personnel, and

- 6337 (2) The agency's inspection procedures, including general  
6338 inspection, material controls, and visual welding  
6339 inspection  
6340  
6341 (b) Qualifications of management and QA personnel designated  
6342 for the project  
6343  
6344 (c) Qualification records for inspectors and NDT technicians  
6345 designated for the project  
6346  
6347 (d) NDT procedures and equipment calibration records for NDT to  
6348 be performed and equipment to be used for the project  
6349  
6350 (e) For composite construction, concrete testing procedures and  
6351 equipment  
6352

6353 **J4. INSPECTION AND NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING**  
6354 **PERSONNEL**  
6355

6356 In addition to the requirements of Specification Sections N4.1 and  
6357 N4.2, visual welding inspection and NDT shall be conducted by  
6358 personnel qualified in accordance with AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 7.2.  
6359 In addition to the requirements of Specification Section N4.3,  
6360 ultrasonic testing technicians shall be qualified in accordance with  
6361 AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause 7.2.4.  
6362

6363 **User Note:** The recommendations of the International Code Council  
6364 Model Program for Special Inspection should be considered a  
6365 minimum requirement to establish the qualifications of a bolting  
6366 inspector.  
6367

6368 **J5. INSPECTION TASKS**  
6369

6370 Inspection tasks and documentation for QC and QA for the seismic  
6371 force resisting system (SFRS) shall be as provided in the tables in  
6372 Sections J6, J7, J8, J9 and J10. The following entries are used in the  
6373 tables:  
6374

6375 **J5.1. Observe (O)**  
6376

6377 The inspector shall observe these functions on a random, daily basis.  
6378 Operations need not be delayed pending observations.  
6379

6380 **J5.2. Perform (P)**  
6381

6382 These inspections shall be performed prior to the final acceptance of

the item.

### **J5.3. Document (D)**

The inspector shall prepare reports indicating that the work has been performed in accordance with the contract documents. The report need not provide detailed measurements for joint fit-up, WPS settings, completed welds, or other individual items listed in the tables. For shop fabrication, the report shall indicate the piece mark of the piece inspected. For field work, the report shall indicate the reference grid lines and floor or elevation inspected. Work not in compliance with the contract documents and whether the noncompliance has been satisfactorily repaired shall be noted in the inspection report.

### **J5.4. Coordinated Inspection**

Where a task is stipulated to be performed by both QC and QA, coordination of the inspection function between QC and QA is permitted in accordance with Specification Section N5.3.

## **J6. WELDING INSPECTION AND NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING**

Welding inspection and nondestructive testing shall satisfy the requirements of the Specification, this section and AWS D1.8/D1.8M.

**User Note:** AWS D1.8/D1.8M was specifically written to provide additional requirements for the welding of seismic force resisting systems, and has been coordinated when possible with these Provisions. AWS D1.8/D1.8M requirements related to inspection and nondestructive testing are organized as follows, including normative (mandatory) annexes:

1. General Requirements

7. Inspection

Annex F. Supplemental Ultrasonic Technician Testing

Annex G. Supplemental Magnetic Particle Testing Procedures

Annex H. Flaw Sizing by Ultrasonic Testing

### **J6.1. Visual Welding Inspection**

All requirements of the Specification shall apply, except as specifically modified by AWS D1.8/D1.8M.

Visual welding inspection shall be performed by both quality control and quality assurance personnel. As a minimum, tasks shall be as listed in Tables J6-1, J6-2 and J6-3.

6429  
6430

DRAFT

**TABLE J6-1**  
**Visual Inspection Tasks Prior to Welding**

| Visual Inspection Tasks Prior to Welding  | QC    |      | QA   |      |
|---|-------|------|------|------|
|   | Task  | Doc. | Task | Doc. |
| Material identification (Type/Grade)  | O     | -    | O    | -    |
| Welder identification system  | O     | -    | O    | -    |
| Fit-up of Groove Welds (including joint geometry) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Joint preparation</li> <li>- Dimensions (alignment, root opening, root face, bevel)</li> <li>- Cleanliness (condition of steel surfaces)</li> <li>- Tacking (tack weld quality and location)</li> <li>- Backing type and fit (if applicable)</li> </ul>  | P/O** | -    | O    | -    |
| Configuration and finish of access holes  | O     | -    | O    | -    |
| Fit-up of Fillet Welds <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Dimensions (alignment, gaps at root)</li> <li>- Cleanliness (condition of steel surfaces)</li> <li>- Tacking (tack weld quality and location)</li> </ul>  | P/O** | -    | O    | -    |
| ** Following performance of this inspection task for ten welds to be made by a given welder, with the welder demonstrating understanding of requirements and possession of skills and tools to verify these items, the Perform designation of this task shall be reduced to Observe, and the welder shall perform this task. Should the inspector determine that the welder has discontinued performance of this task, the task shall be returned to Perform until such time as the Inspector has re-established adequate assurance that the welder will perform the inspection tasks listed. |       |      |      |      |

6431  
6432

**TABLE J6-2**  
**Visual Inspection Tasks During Welding**

| Visual Inspection Tasks During Welding  | QC   |      | QA   |      |
|---|------|------|------|------|
|   | Task | Doc. | Task | Doc. |
| WPS followed<br>- Settings on welding equipment<br>- Travel speed<br>- Selected welding materials<br>- Shielding gas type/flow rate<br>- Preheat applied<br>- Interpass temperature maintained (min/max.)<br>- Proper position (F, V, H, OH)<br>- Intermix of filler metals avoided unless approved | O    | -    | O    | -    |
| Use of qualified welders  | O    | -    | O    | -    |
| Control and handling of welding consumables<br>- Packaging<br>- Exposure control  | O    | -    | O    | -    |
| Environmental conditions<br>- Wind speed within limits<br>- Precipitation and temperature   | O    | -    | O    | -    |
| Welding techniques<br>- Interpass and final cleaning<br>- Each pass within profile limitations<br>- Each pass meets quality requirements  | O    | -    | O    | -    |
| No welding over cracked tacks   | O    | -    | O    | -    |

6433  
6434

**TABLE J6-3**  
**Visual Inspection Tasks After Welding**

| Visual Inspection Tasks After Welding   | QC   |      | QA   |      |
|---|------|------|------|------|
|   | Task | Doc. | Task | Doc. |
| Welds cleaned   | O    | -    | O    | -    |
| Size, length, and location of welds   | P    | -    | P    | -    |
| Welds meet visual acceptance criteria<br>- Crack prohibition<br>- Weld/base-metal fusion<br>- Crater cross section<br>- Weld profiles and size<br>- Undercut<br>- Porosity  | P    | D    | P    | D    |
| k-area <sup>1</sup>   | P    | D    | P    | D    |
| Placement of reinforcing or contouring fillet welds (if required)   | P    | D    | P    | D    |
| Backing removed, weld tabs removed and finished, and fillet welds added (if required)   | P    | D    | P    | D    |
| Repair activities   | P    | -    | P    | D    |
| <sup>1</sup> When welding of doubler plates, continuity plates or stiffeners has been performed in the k-area, visually inspect the web k-area for cracks within 3 in. (75 mm) of the weld. The visual inspection shall be performed no sooner than 48 hours following completion of the welding. |      |      |      |      |

## J6.2. NDT of Welded Joints

In addition to the requirements of Specification Section N5.5, nondestructive testing of welded joints shall be as required in this section:

### J6.2a. CJP Groove Weld NDT

Ultrasonic testing (UT) shall be performed on 100% of CJP groove welds in materials 5/16 in. (8 mm) thick or greater. Ultrasonic testing in materials less than 5/16 in. (8 mm) thick is not required. Weld discontinuities shall be accepted or rejected on the basis of criteria of AWS D1.1/D1.1M Table 6.2. Magnetic particle testing shall be performed on 25% of all beam-to-column CJP groove welds. The rate of UT and MT is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Sections J6.2h and J6.2i, respectively.

Exception: For ordinary moment frames in structures in risk categories I or II, UT and MT of CJP groove welds are required only for demand critical welds.

**User Note:** For structures in Risk Category III or IV, AISC 360 section N5.5b requires that the UT be performed by QA on all CJP groove welds subject to transversely applied tension loading in butt, T- and corner joints, in material 5/16 in. (8 mm) thick or greater.

#### J6.2b. Column Splice and Column to Base Plate PJP Groove Weld NDT

UT shall be performed by QA on 100% of PJP groove welds in column splices and column to base plate welds. The rate of UT is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section J6.2h.

UT shall be performed using written procedures and UT technicians qualified in accordance with AWS D1.8. The weld joint mock-ups used to qualify procedures and technicians shall include at least one single-bevel PJP groove welded joint and one double-bevel PJP groove welded joint, detailed to provide transducer access limitations similar to those to be encountered at the weld faces and by the column web. Rejection of discontinuities outside the groove weld throat shall be considered false indications in procedure and personnel qualification. Procedures qualified using mock-ups with artificial flaws 1/16 in. (1.5 mm) in their smallest dimension are ~~acceptable~~ permitted.

ment [LCA1]: Editorial change to use code age.

UT examination of welds using alternative techniques in compliance with AWS D1.1 Annex Q is ~~acceptable~~ permitted.

ment [LCA2]: Editorial change to use code age.

Weld discontinuities located within the groove weld throat shall be accepted or rejected on the basis of criteria of AWS D1.1/D1.1M Table 6.2, except when alternative techniques are used, the criteria shall be as provided in AWS D1.1 Annex Q.

#### J6.2c. Base Metal NDT for Lamellar Tearing and Laminations

After joint completion, base metal thicker than 1½ in. (38 mm) loaded in tension in the through-thickness direction in tee and corner joints, where the connected material is greater than ¾ in. (19 mm) and contains CJP groove welds, shall be ultrasonically tested for discontinuities behind and adjacent to the fusion line of such welds. Any base metal discontinuities found within t/4 of the steel surface shall be accepted or rejected on the basis of criteria of AWS D1.1/D1.1M Table 6.2, where t is the thickness of the part subjected to the through-thickness strain.

#### J6.2d. Beam Cope and Access Hole NDT

At welded splices and connections, thermally cut surfaces of beam copes and access holes shall be tested using magnetic particle testing

or penetrant testing, when the flange thickness exceeds 1½ in. (38 mm) for rolled shapes, or when the web thickness exceeds 1½ in. (38 mm) for built-up shapes.

#### **J6.2e. Reduced Beam Section Repair NDT**

Magnetic particle testing shall be performed on any weld and adjacent area of the reduced beam section (RBS) cut surface that has been repaired by welding, or on the base metal of the RBS cut surface if a sharp notch has been removed by grinding.

#### **J6.2f. Weld Tab Removal Sites**

At the end of welds where weld tabs have been removed, magnetic particle testing shall be performed on the same beam-to-column joints receiving UT as required under Section J6.2b. The rate of MT is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section J6.2i. MT of continuity plate weld tabs removal sites is not required.

#### **J6.2g.Reduction of Percentage of Ultrasonic Testing**

The reduction of percentage of UT is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Specification Section N5.5e, except no reduction is permitted for demand critical welds.

#### **J6.2h. Reduction of Percentage of Magnetic Particle Testing**

The amount of MT on CJP groove welds is permitted to be reduced if approved by the engineer of record and the authority having jurisdiction. The MT rate for an individual welder or welding operator is permitted to be reduced to 10%, provided the reject rate is demonstrated to be 5% or less of the welds tested for the welder or welding operator. A sampling of at least 20 completed welds for a job shall be made for such reduction evaluation. Reject rate is the number of welds containing rejectable defects divided by the number of welds completed. This reduction is prohibited on welds in the k-area, at repair sites, backing removal sites, and access holes.

### **J7. INSPECTION OF HIGH-STRENGTH BOLTING**

Bolting inspection shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Section N5.6 and this section. Bolting inspection shall be performed by both quality control and quality assurance personnel. As a minimum, the tasks shall be as listed in Tables J7-1, J7-2 and J7-3.

**TABLE J7-1**  
**Inspection Tasks Prior To Bolting**

| Inspection Tasks Prior To Bolting  | QC   |      | QA   |      |
|--|------|------|------|------|
|  | Task | Doc. | Task | Doc. |
| Proper fasteners selected for the joint detail   | O    | –    | O    | –    |
| Proper bolting procedure selected for joint detail   | O    | –    | O    | –    |
| Connecting elements, including the faying surface condition and hole preparation, if specified, meet applicable requirements | O    | –    | O    | –    |
| Pre-installation verification testing by installation personnel observed for fastener assemblies and methods used            | P    | D    | O    | D    |
| Proper storage provided for bolts, nuts, washers and other fastener components   | O    | –    | O    | –    |

**TABLE J7-2**  
**Inspection Tasks During Bolting**

| Inspection Tasks During Bolting   | QC   |      | QA   |      |
|---|------|------|------|------|
|   | Task | Doc. | Task | Doc. |
| Fastener assemblies placed in all holes and washers (if required) are positioned as required      | O    | –    | O    | –    |
| Joint brought to the snug tight condition prior to the pretensioning operation                    | O    | –    | O    | –    |
| Fastener component not turned by the wrench prevented from rotating                               | O    | –    | O    | –    |
| Bolts are pretensioned progressing systematically from the most rigid point toward the free edges | O    | –    | O    | –    |

**TABLE J7-3**  
**Inspection Tasks After Bolting**

| Inspection Tasks After Bolting             | QC   |      | QA   |      |
|--|------|------|------|------|
|  | Task | Doc. | Task | Doc. |
| Document accepted and rejected connections | P    | D    | P    | D    |

## **J8. OTHER STEEL STRUCTURE INSPECTIONS**

Other inspections of the steel structure shall satisfy the requirements of Specification Section N5.8 and this section. Such inspections shall be performed by both quality control and quality assurance personnel. Where applicable, the inspection tasks listed in Table J8-1 shall be performed.

**TABLE J8-1**  
**Other Inspection Tasks**

| Other Inspection Tasks | QC | QA |
|------------------------|----|----|
|------------------------|----|----|

|   | Task | Doc | Task | Doc. |
|---|------|-----|------|------|
| RBS requirements, if applicable<br>- Contour and finish<br>- Dimensional tolerances             | P    | D   | P    | D    |
| Protected zone—no holes and unapproved attachments made by fabricator or erector, as applicable | P    | D   | P    | D    |

**User Note:** The protected zone should be inspected by others following completion of the work of other trades, including those involving curtainwall, mechanical, electrical, plumbing and interior partitions. See Section A4.1(3).

#### J9. INSPECTION OF COMPOSITE STRUCTURES

Where applicable, inspection of composite structures shall satisfy the requirements of the Specification and this section. These inspections shall be performed by the responsible contractor's quality control personnel and by quality assurance personnel.

Where applicable, inspection of structural steel elements used in composite structures shall comply with the requirements of this Chapter. Where applicable, inspection of reinforced concrete shall comply with the requirements of ACI 318, and inspection of welded reinforcing steel shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section J6.1.

Where applicable to the type of composite construction, the minimum inspection tasks shall be as listed in Tables J9-1, J9-2 and J9-3.

**TABLE J9-1**  
**Inspection of Composite Structures Prior to Concrete Placement**

| Inspection of Composite Structures Prior to Concrete Placement                | QC   |     | QA   |      |
|---|------|-----|------|------|
|   | Task | Doc | Task | Doc. |
| Material identification of reinforcing steel (Type/Grade)                     | O    | –   | O    | –    |
| Determination of carbon equivalent for reinforcing steel other than ASTM A706 | O    | –   | O    | –    |
| Proper reinforcing steel size, spacing and orientation                        | O    | –   | O    | –    |
| Reinforcing steel has not been rebent in the field                            | O    | –   | O    | –    |
| Reinforcing steel has been tied and supported as required                     | O    | –   | O    | –    |
| Required reinforcing steel clearances have been provided                      | O    | –   | O    | –    |
| Composite member has required size  | O    | –   | O    | –    |

6587  
6588

**TABLE J9-2**  
**Inspection of Composite Structures during Concrete Placement**

| Inspection of Composite Structures during Concrete Placement  | QC   |     | QA   |      |
|---|------|-----|------|------|
|   | Task | Doc | Task | Doc. |
| Concrete: Material identification (mix design, compressive strength, maximum large aggregate size, maximum slump) | O    | D   | O    | D    |
| Limits on water added at the truck or pump  | O    | D   | O    | D    |
| Proper placement techniques to limit segregation  | O    | –   | O    | –    |

6589

**TABLE J9-3**  
**Inspection of Composite Structures after Concrete Placement**

| Inspection of Composite Structures After Concrete Placement                     | QC   |     | QA   |      |
|---|------|-----|------|------|
|   | Task | Doc | Task | Doc. |
| Achievement of minimum specified concrete compressive strength at specified age | –    | D   | –    | D    |

6590  
6591

**J10. INSPECTION OF H-PILES**

Where applicable, inspection of piling shall satisfy the requirements of this section. These inspections shall be performed by both the responsible contractor's quality control personnel and by quality assurance personnel. Where applicable, the inspection tasks listed in Table J10-1 shall be performed.

| <b>TABLE J10-1<br/>Inspection of H-Piles</b>   |             |             |             |             |
|--|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <b>Inspection of Piling</b>  | <b>QC</b>   |             | <b>QA</b>   |             |
|  | <b>Task</b> | <b>Doc.</b> | <b>Task</b> | <b>Doc.</b> |
| Protected zone—no holes and unapproved attachments made by the responsible contractor, as applicable | P           | D           | P           | D           |

## CHAPTER K

### PREQUALIFICATION AND CYCLIC QUALIFICATION TESTING PROVISIONS

This chapter addresses requirements for qualification and prequalification testing.

This chapter is organized as follows:

- K1. Prequalification of Beam-to-Column and Link-to-Column Connections
- K2. Cyclic Tests for Qualification of Beam-to-Column and Link-to-Column Connections
- K3. Cyclic Tests for Qualification of Buckling Restrained Braces

#### **K1. PREQUALIFICATION OF BEAM-TO-COLUMN AND LINK-TO-COLUMN CONNECTIONS**

##### **K1.1. Scope**

This section contains minimum requirements for prequalification of beam-to-column moment connections in SMF, IMF, C-SMF, and C-IMF, and link-to-column connections in EBF. Prequalified connections are permitted to be used, within the applicable limits of prequalification, without the need for further qualifying cyclic tests. When the limits of prequalification or design requirements for prequalified connections conflict with the requirements of these Provisions, the limits of prequalification and design requirements for prequalified connections shall govern.

##### **K1.2. General Requirements**

##### **K1.2a. Basis for Prequalification**

Connections shall be prequalified based on test data satisfying Section K1.3, supported by analytical studies and design models. The combined body of evidence for prequalification must be sufficient to assure that the connection is able to supply the required story drift angle for SMF, IMF, C-SMF, and C-IMF systems, or the required link rotation angle for EBF, on a consistent and reliable basis within the specified limits of prequalification. All applicable limit states for the connection that affect the stiffness, strength and deformation capacity of the connection and the seismic force resisting system (SFRS) must be identified. The effect of design variables listed in Section K1.4 shall be addressed for connection prequalification.

##### **K1.2b. Authority for Prequalification**

6637 Prequalification of a connection and the associated limits of  
 6638 prequalification shall be established by a connection prequalification  
 6639 review panel (CPRP) approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

### 6640 **K1.3. Testing Requirements**

6641 Data used to support connection prequalification shall be based on  
 6642 tests conducted in accordance with Section K2. The CPRP shall  
 6643 determine the number of tests and the variables considered by the tests  
 6644 for connection prequalification. The CPRP shall also provide the same  
 6645 information when limits are to be changed for a previously  
 6646 prequalified connection. A sufficient number of tests shall be  
 6647 performed on a sufficient number of nonidentical specimens to  
 6648 demonstrate that the connection has the ability and reliability to  
 6649 undergo the required story drift angle for SMF, IMF, C-SMF, and C-  
 6650 IMF and the required link rotation angle for EBF, where the link is  
 6651 adjacent to columns. The limits on member sizes for prequalification  
 6652 shall not exceed the limits specified in Section K2.3b.

### 6653 **K1.4. Prequalification Variables**

6654  
 6655 In order to be prequalified, the effect of the following variables on  
 6656 connection performance shall be considered. Limits on the permissible  
 6657 values for each variable shall be established by the CPRP for the  
 6658 prequalified connection.  
 6659

#### 6660 **K1.4a. Beam and Column Parameters for SMF and IMF, Link and** 6661 **Column Parameters for EBF**

- 6662 (a) Cross-section shape: wide flange, box or other
- 6663 (b) Cross-section fabrication method: rolled shape, welded shape or  
 6664 other
- 6665 (c) Depth
- 6666 (d) Weight per foot
- 6667 (e) Flange thickness
- 6668 (f) Material specification
- 6669 (g) Beam span-to-depth ratio (for SMF or IMF), or link length (for  
 6670 EBF)
- 6671 (h) Width-to-thickness ratio of cross-section elements
- 6672 (i) Lateral bracing

6673 (j) Column orientation with respect to beam or link: beam or link is  
 6674 connected to column flange, beam or link is connected to  
 6675 column web, beams or links are connected to both the column  
 6676 flange and web, or other

6677 (k) Other parameters pertinent to the specific connection under  
 6678 consideration

6679 **K1.4b. Beam and Column Parameters for C-SMF and C-IMF**

6680 (a) For structural steel members that are part of a composite beam  
 6681 or column: specify parameters required in Section K1.4a.

6682 (b) Overall depth of composite beam and column

6683 (c) Composite beam span to depth ratio

6684 (d) Reinforcing bar diameter

6685 (e) Reinforcement material specification

6686 (f) Reinforcement development and splice requirements

6687 (g) Transverse reinforcement requirements

6688 (h) Concrete compressive strength and density

6689 (i) Steel anchor dimensions and material specification

6690 (j) Other parameters pertinent to the specific connection under  
 6691 consideration

6692 **K1.4c. Beam-to-Column or Link-to-Column Relations**

6693 (a) Panel zone strength for SMF, IMF, and EBF

6694 (b) Joint shear strength for C-SMF and C-IMF

6695 (c) Doubler plate attachment details for SMF, IMF, and EBF

6696 (d) Joint reinforcement details for C-SMF and C-IMF

6697 (e) Column-to-beam (or column-to-link) moment ratio

6698 **K1.4d. Continuity and Diaphragm Plates**

6699 (a) Identification of conditions under which continuity plates or  
 6700 diaphragm plates are required

6701 (b) Thickness, width and depth

6702 (c) Attachment details

6703 **K1.4e. Welds**

- 6704 (a) Location, extent (including returns), type (CJP, PJP, fillet, etc.)
- 6705 and any reinforcement or contouring required
- 6706 (b) Filler metal classification strength and notch toughness
- 6707 (c) Details and treatment of weld backing and weld tabs
- 6708 (d) Weld access holes: size, geometry and finish
- 6709 (e) Welding quality control and quality assurance beyond that
- 6710 described in Chapter J, including NDT method, inspection
- 6711 frequency, acceptance criteria and documentation requirements

6712 **K1.4f. Bolts**

- 6713 (a) Bolt diameter
- 6714 (b) Bolt grade: ASTM A325, A325M, A490, A490M or other
- 6715 (c) Installation requirements: pretensioned, snug-tight or other
- 6716 (d) Hole type: standard, oversize, short-slot, long-slot or other
- 6717 (e) Hole fabrication method: drilling, punching, sub-punching and
- 6718 reaming, or other
- 6719 (f) Other parameters pertinent to the specific connection under
- 6720 consideration

6721 **K1.4g. Reinforcement in C-SMF and C-IMF**

- 6722 (a) Location of longitudinal and transverse reinforcement
- 6723 (b) Cover requirements
- 6724 (c) Hook configurations and other pertinent reinforcement details

6725 **K1.4h. Quality Control and Quality Assurance**

- 6726 Requirements that exceed or supplement requirements specified in
- 6727 Chapter J, if any.

6728 **K1.4i. Additional Connection Details**

- 6729 All variables and workmanship parameters that exceed AISC, RCSC
- 6730 and AWS requirements pertinent to the specific connection under
- 6731 consideration, as established by the CPRP.

6732 **K1.5. Design Procedure**

6733 A comprehensive design procedure must be available for a  
 6734 prequalified connection. The design procedure must address all  
 6735 applicable limit states within the limits of prequalification.

#### 6736 **K1.6. Prequalification Record**

6737 A prequalified connection shall be provided with a written  
 6738 prequalification record with the following information:

- 6739 (a) General description of the prequalified connection and drawings  
 6740 that clearly identify key features and components of the  
 6741 connection
- 6742 (b) Description of the expected behavior of the connection in the  
 6743 elastic and inelastic ranges of behavior, intended location(s) of  
 6744 inelastic action, and a description of limit states controlling the  
 6745 strength and deformation capacity of the connection
- 6746 (c) Listing of systems for which connection is prequalified: SMF,  
 6747 IMF, EBF, C-SMF, or C-IMF.
- 6748 (d) Listing of limits for all applicable prequalification variables  
 6749 listed in Section K1.4
- 6750 (e) Listing of demand critical welds
- 6751 (f) Definition of the region of the connection that comprises the  
 6752 protected zone
- 6753 (g) Detailed description of the design procedure for the connection,  
 6754 as required in Section K1.5
- 6755 (h) List of references of test reports, research reports and other  
 6756 publications that provided the basis for prequalification
- 6757 (i) Summary of quality control and quality assurance procedures

6758

### 6759 **K2. CYCLIC TESTS FOR QUALIFICATION OF BEAM-TO-** 6760 **COLUMN AND LINK-TO-COLUMN CONNECTIONS**

#### 6761 **K2.1. Scope**

6762 This section provides requirements for qualifying cyclic tests of beam-  
 6763 to-column moment connections in SMF, IMF, C-SMF, and C-IMF;  
 6764 and link-to-column connections in EBF, when required in these  
 6765 Provisions. The purpose of the testing described in this section is to  
 6766 provide evidence that a beam-to-column connection or a link-to-  
 6767 column connection satisfies the requirements for strength and story

6768 drift angle or link rotation angle in these Provisions. Alternative  
 6769 testing requirements are permitted when approved by the engineer of  
 6770 record and the authority having jurisdiction.

## 6771 **K2.2. Test Subassembly Requirements**

6772 The test subassembly shall replicate as closely as is practical the  
 6773 conditions that will occur in the prototype during earthquake loading.  
 6774 The test subassembly shall include the following features:

- 6775 (a) The test specimen shall consist of at least a single column with  
 6776 beams or links attached to one or both sides of the column.
- 6777 (b) Points of inflection in the test assemblage shall coincide with  
 6778 the anticipated points of inflection in the prototype under  
 6779 earthquake loading.
- 6780 (c) Lateral bracing of the test subassembly is permitted near load  
 6781 application or reaction points as needed to provide lateral  
 6782 stability of the test subassembly. Additional lateral bracing of  
 6783 the test subassembly is not permitted, unless it replicates  
 6784 lateral bracing to be used in the prototype.

## 6785 **K2.3. Essential Test Variables**

6786 The test specimen shall replicate as closely as is practical the pertinent  
 6787 design, detailing, construction features, and material properties of the  
 6788 prototype. The following variables shall be replicated in the test  
 6789 specimen.

### 6790 **K2.3a. Sources of Inelastic Rotation**

6791 The inelastic rotation shall be computed based on an analysis of test  
 6792 specimen deformations. Sources of inelastic rotation include, but are  
 6793 not limited to, yielding of members, yielding of connection elements  
 6794 and connectors, yielding of reinforcing steel, inelastic deformation of  
 6795 concrete, and slip between members and connection elements. For  
 6796 beam-to-column moment connections in SMF, IMF, C-SMF, and C-  
 6797 IMF, inelastic rotation is computed based upon the assumption that  
 6798 inelastic action is concentrated at a single point located at the  
 6799 intersection of the centerline of the beam with the centerline of the  
 6800 column. For link-to-column connections in EBF, inelastic rotation  
 6801 shall be computed based upon the assumption that inelastic action is  
 6802 concentrated at a single point located at the intersection of the  
 6803 centerline of the link with the face of the column.

6804 Inelastic rotation shall be developed in the test specimen by inelastic  
 6805 action in the same members and connection elements as anticipated in

6806 the prototype (in other words, in the beam or link, in the column panel  
 6807 zone, in the column outside of the panel zone, or in connection  
 6808 elements) within the limits described below. The percentage of the  
 6809 total inelastic rotation in the test specimen that is developed in each  
 6810 member or connection element shall be within 25% of the anticipated  
 6811 percentage of the total inelastic rotation in the prototype that is  
 6812 developed in the corresponding member or connection element.

### 6813 **K2.3b. Members**

6814 The size of the beam or link used in the test specimen shall be within  
 6815 the following limits:

- 6816 (a) The depth of the test beam or link shall be no less than 90% of  
 6817 the depth of the prototype beam or link.
- 6818 (b) For SMF, IMF and EBF, the weight per foot of the test beam or  
 6819 link shall be no less than 75% of the weight per foot of the  
 6820 prototype beam or link.
- 6821 (c) For C-SMF and C-IMF, the weight per foot of the structural  
 6822 steel member that forms part of the test beam shall be no less  
 6823 than 75% of the weight per foot of the structural steel member  
 6824 that forms part of the prototype beam.

6825 The size of the column used in the test specimen shall correctly  
 6826 represent the inelastic action in the column, as per the requirements in  
 6827 Section K2.3a. In addition, in SMF, IMF, and EBF, the depth of the  
 6828 test column shall be no less than 90% of the depth of the prototype  
 6829 column. In C-SMF and C-IMF, the depth of the structural steel  
 6830 member that forms part of the test column shall be no less than 90% of  
 6831 the depth of the structural steel member that forms part of the  
 6832 prototype column.

6833 The width-to-thickness ratios of compression elements of steel  
 6834 members of the test specimen shall meet the width-to-thickness  
 6835 limitations as specified in these Provisions for members in SMF, IMF,  
 6836 C-SMF, C-IMF, or EBF, as applicable.

6837 Exception: The width-to-thickness ratios of compression elements of  
 6838 members in the test specimen are permitted to exceed the width-to-  
 6839 thickness limitations specified in these Provisions if both of the  
 6840 following conditions are met:

- 6841 (a) The width-to-thickness ratios of compression elements of the  
 6842 members of the test specimen are no less than the width-to-  
 6843 thickness ratios of compression elements in the corresponding  
 6844 prototype members.

- (b) Design features that are intended to restrain local buckling in the test specimen such as concrete encasement of steel members, concrete filling of steel members and other similar features are representative of the corresponding design features in the prototype.

Extrapolation beyond the limitations stated in this section is permitted subject to qualified peer review and approval by the authority having jurisdiction.

### **K2.3c. Reinforcing Steel Amount, Size and Detailing**

The total area of the longitudinal reinforcing bars shall not be less than 75% of the area in the prototype, and individual bars shall not have an area less than 70% of the maximum bar size in the prototype.

Design approaches and methods used for anchorage and development of reinforcement, and for splicing reinforcement in the test specimen shall be representative of the prototype.

The amount, arrangement and hook configurations for transverse reinforcement shall be representative of the bond, confinement and anchorage conditions of the prototype.

### **K2.3d. Connection Details**

The connection details used in the test specimen shall represent the prototype connection details as closely as possible. The connection elements used in the test specimen shall be a full-scale representation of the connection elements used in the prototype, for the member sizes being tested.

### **K2.3e. Continuity Plates**

The size and connection details of continuity plates used in the test specimen shall be proportioned to match the size and connection details of continuity plates used in the prototype connection as closely as possible.

### **K2.3f. Steel Strength for Steel Members and Connection Elements**

The following additional requirements shall be satisfied for each steel member or connection element of the test specimen that supplies inelastic rotation by yielding:

- (a) The yield strength shall be determined as specified in Section K2.6a. The use of yield stress values that are reported on certified material test reports in lieu of physical testing is

6881 prohibited for the purposes of this section.

6882 (b) The yield strength of the beam flange as tested in accordance  
6883 with Section K2.6a shall not be more than 15% below  $R_y F_y$  for  
6884 the grade of steel to be used for the corresponding elements of  
6885 the prototype.

6886 (c) The yield strength of the columns and connection elements shall  
6887 not be more than 15% above or below  $R_y F_y$  for the grade of steel  
6888 to be used for the corresponding elements of the prototype.  $R_y F_y$   
6889 shall be determined in accordance with Section A3.2.

6890 **User Note:** Based upon the above criteria, steel of the specified  
6891 grade with a specified minimum yield stress,  $F_y$ , of up to and  
6892 including 1.15 times the  $R_y F_y$  for the steel tested should be  
6893 permitted in the prototype. In production, this limit should be  
6894 checked using the values stated on the steel manufacturer's  
6895 material test reports.

### 6896 **K2.3g.Steel Strength and Grade for Reinforcing Steel**

6897 Reinforcing steel in the test specimen shall have the same ASTM  
6898 designation as the corresponding reinforcing steel in the prototype. The  
6899 specified minimum yield stress of reinforcing steel in the test specimen  
6900 shall not be less than the specified minimum yield stress of the  
6901 corresponding reinforcing steel in the prototype.

### 6902 **K2.3h.Concrete Strength and Density**

6903 The specified compressive strength of concrete in members and  
6904 connection elements of the test specimen shall be at least 75% and no  
6905 more than 125% of the specified compressive strength of concrete in  
6906 the corresponding members and connection elements of the prototype.

6907 The compressive strength of concrete in the test specimen shall be  
6908 determined in accordance with Section K2.6d.

6909 The density classification of the concrete in the members and  
6910 connection elements of the test specimen shall be the same as the  
6911 density classification of concrete in the corresponding members and  
6912 connection elements of the prototype. The density classification of  
6913 concrete shall correspond to either normal weight, lightweight, all-  
6914 lightweight, or sand-lightweight as defined in ACI 318.

### 6915 **K2.3i.Welded Joints**

6916 Welds on the test specimen shall satisfy the following requirements:

6917 (a) Welding shall be performed in conformance with Welding

Procedure Specifications (WPS) as required in AWS D1.1/D1.1M. The WPS essential variables shall satisfy the requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M and shall be within the parameters established by the filler-metal manufacturer. The tensile strength and Charpy V-notch (CVN) toughness of the welds used in the test specimen shall be determined by tests as specified in Section K2.6e, made using the same filler metal classification, manufacturer, brand or trade name, diameter, and average heat input for the WPS used on the test specimen. The use of tensile strength and CVN toughness values that are reported on the manufacturer's typical certificate of conformance in lieu of physical testing is prohibited for purposes of this section.

- (b) The specified minimum tensile strength of the filler metal used for the test specimen shall be the same as that to be used for the welds on the corresponding prototype. The tensile strength of the deposited weld as tested in accordance with Section K2.6c shall not exceed the tensile strength classification of the filler metal specified for the prototype by more than 25 ksi (172 MPa).

**User Note:** Based upon the criteria in (2) above, should the tested tensile strength of the weld metal exceed 25 ksi (172 MPa) above the specified minimum tensile strength, the prototype weld should be made with a filler metal and WPS that will provide a tensile strength no less than 25 ksi (172 MPa) below the tensile strength measured in the material test plate. When this is the case, the tensile strength of welds resulting from use of the filler metal and the WPS to be used in the prototype should be determined by using an all-weld-metal tension specimen. The test plate is described in AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause A6 and shown in AWS D1.8/D1.8M Figure A.1.

- (c) The specified minimum CVN toughness of the filler metal used for the test specimen shall not exceed that to be used for the welds on the corresponding prototype. The tested CVN toughness of the weld as tested in accordance with Section K2.6c shall not exceed the minimum CVN toughness specified for the prototype by more than 50%, nor 25 ft-lb (34 kJ), whichever is greater.

**User Note:** Based upon the criteria in (3) above, should the tested CVN toughness of the weld metal in the material test specimen exceed the specified CVN toughness for the test specimen by 25 ft-lb (34 kJ) or 50%, whichever is greater, the

prototype weld should be made with a filler metal and WPS that will provide a CVN toughness that is no less than 25 ft-lb (34 kJ) or 33% lower, whichever is lower, below the CVN toughness measured in the weld metal material test plate. When this is the case, the weld properties resulting from the filler metal and WPS to be used in the prototype should be determined using five CVN test specimens. The test plate is described in AWS D1.8/D1.8M clause A6 and shown in AWS D1.8/D1.8M Figure A.1.

- (d) The welding positions used to make the welds on the test specimen shall be the same as those to be used for the prototype welds.
- (e) Weld details such as backing, tabs and access holes used for the test specimen welds shall be the same as those to be used for the corresponding prototype welds. Weld backing and weld tabs shall not be removed from the test specimen welds unless the corresponding weld backing and weld tabs are removed from the prototype welds.
- (f) Methods of inspection and nondestructive testing and standards of acceptance used for test specimen welds shall be the same as those to be used for the prototype welds.

**User Note:** The filler metal used for production of the prototype is permitted to be of a different classification, manufacturer, brand or trade name, and diameter, provided that Sections K2.3f(b) and K2.3f(c) are satisfied. To qualify alternate filler metals, the tests as prescribed in Section K2.6c should be conducted.

### K2.3j.Bolted Joints

The bolted portions of the test specimen shall replicate the bolted portions of the prototype connection as closely as possible. Additionally, bolted portions of the test specimen shall satisfy the following requirements:

- (a) The bolt grade (for example, ASTM A325, A325M, ASTM A490, A490M, ASTM F1852, ASTM F2280) used in the test specimen shall be the same as that to be used for the prototype, except that heavy hex bolts are permitted to be substituted for twist-off-type tension control bolts of equal minimum specified tensile strength, and vice versa.
- (b) The type and orientation of bolt holes (standard, oversize, short slot, long slot or other) used in the test specimen shall be the same as those to be used for the corresponding bolt holes in the prototype.

7001 (c) When inelastic rotation is to be developed either by yielding or  
 7002 by slip within a bolted portion of the connection, the method used to  
 7003 make the bolt holes (drilling, sub-punching and reaming, or other) in  
 7004 the test specimen shall be the same as that to be used in the  
 7005 corresponding bolt holes in the prototype.

7006 (d) Bolts in the test specimen shall have the same installation  
 7007 (pretensioned or other) and faying surface preparation (no specified  
 7008 slip resistance, Class A or B slip resistance, or other) as that to be used  
 7009 for the corresponding bolts in the prototype.

### 7010 **K2.3k. Load Transfer Between Steel and Concrete**

7011 Methods used to provide load transfer between steel and concrete in  
 7012 the members and connection elements of the test specimen, including  
 7013 direct bearing, shear connection, friction and others, shall be  
 7014 representative of the prototype.

### 7015 **K2.4. Loading History**

#### 7016 **K2.4a. General Requirements**

7017 The test specimen shall be subjected to cyclic loads in accordance with  
 7018 the requirements prescribed in Section K2.4b for beam-to-column  
 7019 moment connections in SMF, IMF, C-SMF, and C-IMF, and in  
 7020 accordance with the requirements prescribed in Section K2.4c for link-  
 7021 to-column connections in EBF.

7022 Loading sequences to qualify connections for use in SMF, IMF, C-  
 7023 SMF, or C-IMF with columns loaded orthogonally shall be applied  
 7024 about both axes using the loading sequence specified in Section K2.4b.  
 7025 Beams used about each axis shall represent the most demanding  
 7026 combination for which qualification or prequalification is sought. In  
 7027 lieu of concurrent application about each axis of the loading sequence  
 7028 specified in Section K2.4b, the loading sequence about one axis shall  
 7029 satisfy requirements of Section K2.4b while a concurrent load of  
 7030 constant magnitude, equal to the expected strength of the beam  
 7031 connected to the column about its orthogonal axis, shall be applied  
 7032 about the orthogonal axis.

7033 Loading sequences other than those specified in Sections K2.4b and  
 7034 K2.4c are permitted to be used when they are demonstrated to be of  
 7035 equivalent or greater severity.

#### 7036 **K2.4b. Loading Sequence for Beam-to-Column Moment Connections**

7037 Qualifying cyclic tests of beam-to-column moment connections in  
 7038 SMF, IMF, C-SMF and C-IMF shall be conducted by controlling the

7039 story drift angle,  $\theta$ , imposed on the test specimen, as specified below:

7040 (a) 6 cycles at  $\theta = 0.00375$  rad

7041 (b) 6 cycles at  $\theta = 0.005$  rad

7042 (c) 6 cycles at  $\theta = 0.0075$  rad

7043 (d) 4 cycles at  $\theta = 0.01$  rad

7044 (e) 2 cycles at  $\theta = 0.015$  rad

7045 (f) 2 cycles at  $\theta = 0.02$  rad

7046 (g) 2 cycles at  $\theta = 0.03$  rad

7047 (h) 2 cycles at  $\theta = 0.04$  rad

7048 Continue loading at increments of  $\theta = 0.01$  rad, with two cycles of  
7049 loading at each step.

#### 7050 **K2.4c. Loading Sequence for Link-to-Column Connections**

7051 Qualifying cyclic tests of link-to-column moment connections in EBF  
7052 shall be conducted by controlling the total link rotation angle,  $\gamma_{total}$ ,  
7053 imposed on the test specimen, as follows:

7054 (a) 6 cycles at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.00375$  rad

7055 (b) 6 cycles at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.005$  rad

7056 (c) 6 cycles at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.0075$  rad

7057 (d) 6 cycles at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.01$  rad

7058 (e) 4 cycles at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.015$  rad

7059 (f) 4 cycles at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.02$  rad

7060 (g) 2 cycles at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.03$  rad

7061 (h) 1 cycle at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.04$  rad

7062 (i) 1 cycle at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.05$  rad

7063 (j) 1 cycle at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.07$  rad

7064 (k) 1 cycle at  $\gamma_{total} = 0.09$  rad

7065 Continue loading at increments of  $\gamma_{total} = 0.02$  rad, with one cycle of

7066 loading at each step.

7067 **K2.5. Instrumentation**

7068 Sufficient instrumentation shall be provided on the test specimen to  
7069 permit measurement or calculation of the quantities listed in Section  
7070 K2.7.

7071 **K2.6. Testing Requirements for Material Specimens**

7072 **K2.6a. Tension Testing Requirements for Structural Steel Material**  
7073 **Specimens**

7074 Tension testing shall be conducted on samples taken from material test  
7075 plates in accordance with Section K2.6c. The material test plates shall  
7076 be taken from the steel of the same heat as used in the test specimen.  
7077 Tension-test results from certified material test reports shall be  
7078 reported, but shall not be used in lieu of physical testing for the  
7079 purposes of this section. Tension testing shall be conducted and  
7080 reported for the following portions of the test specimen:

7081 (a) Flange(s) and web(s) of beams and columns at standard  
7082 locations

7083 (b) Any element of the connection that supplies inelastic rotation by  
7084 yielding

7085 **K2.6b. Tension Testing Requirements for Reinforcing Steel Material**  
7086 **Specimens**

7087 Tension testing shall be conducted on samples of reinforcing steel in  
7088 accordance with Section K2.6c. Samples of reinforcing steel used for  
7089 material tests shall be taken from the same heat as used in the test  
7090 specimen. Tension-test results from certified material test reports shall  
7091 be reported, but shall not be used in lieu of physical testing for the  
7092 purposes of this section.

7093 **K2.6c. Methods of Tension Testing for Structural and Reinforcing Steel**  
7094 **Material Specimens**

7095 Tension testing shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM  
7096 A6/A6M, ASTM A370, and ASTM E8, as applicable, with the  
7097 following exceptions:

7098 (a) The yield strength,  $F_y$ , that is reported from the test shall be  
7099 based upon the yield strength definition in ASTM A370, using  
7100 the offset method at 0.002 in./in. strain.

7101 (b) The loading rate for the tension test shall replicate, as closely as

7102 practical, the loading rate to be used for the test specimen.

7103 **K2.6d. Testing Requirements for Concrete**

7104 Test cylinders of concrete used for the test specimen shall be made and  
 7105 cured in accordance with ASTM C31. At least three cylinders of each  
 7106 batch of concrete used in a component of the test specimen shall be  
 7107 tested within five days before or after of the end of the cyclic qualifying  
 7108 test of the test specimen. Tests of concrete cylinders shall be in  
 7109 accordance with ASTM C39. The average compressive strength of the  
 7110 three cylinders shall be no less than 90% and no greater than 150% of  
 7111 the specified compressive strength of the concrete in the corresponding  
 7112 member or connection element of the test specimen. In addition, the  
 7113 average compressive strength of the three cylinders shall be no more  
 7114 than 3000 psi greater than the specified compressive strength of the  
 7115 concrete in the corresponding member or connection element of the test  
 7116 specimen.

7117 Exception: If the average compressive strength of three cylinders is  
 7118 outside of these limits, the specimen is still acceptable if supporting  
 7119 calculations or other evidence is provided to demonstrate how the  
 7120 difference in concrete strength will affect the connection performance.

7121 **K2.6e. Testing Requirements for Weld Metal Material Specimens**

7122 Weld metal testing shall be conducted on samples extracted from the  
 7123 material test plate, made using the same filler metal classification,  
 7124 manufacturer, brand or trade name and diameter, and using the same  
 7125 average heat input as used in the welding of the test specimen. The  
 7126 tensile strength and CVN toughness of weld material specimens shall  
 7127 be determined in accordance with Standard Methods for Mechanical  
 7128 Testing of Welds (AWS B4.0/B4.0M). The use of tensile strength and  
 7129 CVN toughness values that are reported on the manufacturer's typical  
 7130 certificate of conformance in lieu of physical testing is prohibited for  
 7131 use for purposes of this section.

7132 The same WPS shall be used to make the test specimen and the  
 7133 material test plate. The material test plate shall use base metal of the  
 7134 same grade and type as was used for the test specimen, although the  
 7135 same heat need not be used. If the average heat input used for making  
 7136 the material test plate is not within  $\pm 20\%$  of that used for the test  
 7137 specimen, a new material test plate shall be made and tested.

7138 **K2.7. Test Reporting Requirements**

7139 For each test specimen, a written test report meeting the requirements  
 7140 of the authority having jurisdiction and the requirements of this section  
 7141 shall be prepared. The report shall thoroughly document all key

- 7142 features and results of the test. The report shall include the following  
7143 information:
- 7144 (a) A drawing or clear description of the test subassembly,  
7145 including key dimensions, boundary conditions at loading and  
7146 reaction points, and location of lateral braces.
  - 7147 (b) A drawing of the connection detail showing member sizes,  
7148 grades of steel, the sizes of all connection elements, welding  
7149 details including filler metal, the size and location of bolt holes,  
7150 the size and grade of bolts, specified compressive strength and  
7151 density of concrete, reinforcing bar sizes and grades, reinforcing  
7152 bar locations, reinforcing bar splice and anchorage details, and  
7153 all other pertinent details of the connection.
  - 7154 (c) A listing of all other essential variables for the test specimen, as  
7155 listed in Section K2.3.
  - 7156 (d) A listing or plot showing the applied load or displacement  
7157 history of the test specimen.
  - 7158 (e) A listing of all welds to be designated demand critical.
  - 7159 (f) Definition of the region of the member and connection to be  
7160 designated a protected zone.
  - 7161 (g) A plot of the applied load versus the displacement of the test  
7162 specimen. The displacement reported in this plot shall be  
7163 measured at or near the point of load application. The locations  
7164 on the test specimen where the loads and displacements were  
7165 measured shall be clearly indicated.
  - 7166 (h) A plot of beam moment versus story drift angle for beam-to-  
7167 column moment connections; or a plot of link shear force versus  
7168 link rotation angle for link-to-column connections. For beam-to-  
7169 column connections, the beam moment and the story drift angle  
7170 shall be computed with respect to the centerline of the column.
  - 7171 (i) The story drift angle and the total inelastic rotation developed  
7172 by the test specimen. The components of the test specimen  
7173 contributing to the total inelastic rotation shall be identified.  
7174 The portion of the total inelastic rotation contributed by each  
7175 component of the test specimen shall be reported. The method  
7176 used to compute inelastic rotations shall be clearly shown.
  - 7177 (j) A chronological listing of test observations, including  
7178 observations of yielding, slip, instability, cracking and rupture  
7179 of steel elements, cracking of concrete, and other damage of  
7180 any portion of the test specimen as applicable.

- 7181 (k) The controlling failure mode for the test specimen. If the test is  
 7182 terminated prior to failure, the reason for terminating the test  
 7183 shall be clearly indicated.
- 7184 (l) The results of the material specimen tests specified in Section  
 7185 K2.6.
- 7186 (m) The welding procedure specifications (WPS) and welding  
 7187 inspection reports.

7188 Additional drawings, data, and discussion of the test specimen or test  
 7189 results are permitted to be included in the report.

## 7190 **K2.8. Acceptance Criteria**

7191 The test specimen must satisfy the strength and story drift angle or link  
 7192 rotation angle requirements of these Provisions for the SMF, IMF, C-  
 7193 SMF, C-IMF, or EBF connection, as applicable. The test specimen  
 7194 must sustain the required story drift angle or link rotation angle for at  
 7195 least one complete loading cycle.

## 7197 **K3. CYCLIC TESTS FOR QUALIFICATION OF BUCKLING- 7198 RESTRAINED BRACES**

### 7200 **K3.1. Scope**

7201 This section includes requirements for qualifying cyclic tests of  
 7202 individual buckling-restrained braces and buckling-restrained brace  
 7203 subassemblages, when required in these provisions. The purpose of the  
 7204 testing of individual braces is to provide evidence that a buckling-  
 7205 restrained brace satisfies the requirements for strength and inelastic  
 7206 deformation by these provisions; it also permits the determination of  
 7207 maximum brace forces for design of adjoining elements. The purpose  
 7208 of testing of the brace subassemblage is to provide evidence that the  
 7209 brace-design is able to satisfactorily accommodate the deformation and  
 7210 rotational demands associated with the design. Further, the  
 7211 subassemblage test is intended to demonstrate that the hysteretic  
 7212 behavior of the brace in the subassemblage is consistent with that of  
 7213 the individual brace elements tested uniaxially.

7214 Alternative testing requirements are permitted when approved by the  
 7215 engineer of record and the authority having jurisdiction. This section  
 7216 provides only minimum recommendations for simplified test  
 7217 conditions.

### 7220 **K3.2. Subassemblage Test Specimen**

7221 The subassemblage test specimen shall satisfy the following

7223 requirements:

- 7224 (a) The mechanism for accommodating inelastic rotation in the  
 7225 subassembly test specimen brace shall be the same as that of  
 7226 the prototype. The rotational deformation demands on the  
 7227 subassembly test specimen brace shall be equal to or greater  
 7228 than those of the prototype.
- 7229 (b) The axial yield strength of the steel core,  $P_{ysc}$ , of the brace in the  
 7230 subassembly test specimen shall not be less than 90% of that  
 7231 of the prototype where both strengths are based on the core  
 7232 area,  $A_{sc}$ , multiplied by the yield strength as determined from a  
 7233 coupon test.
- 7234 (c) The cross-sectional shape and orientation of the steel core  
 7235 projection of the subassembly test specimen brace shall be the  
 7236 same as that of the brace in the prototype.
- 7237 (d) The same documented design methodology shall be used for  
 7238 design of the subassembly as used for the prototype, to allow  
 7239 comparison of the rotational deformation demands on the  
 7240 subassembly brace to the prototype. In stability calculations,  
 7241 beams, columns and gussets connecting the core shall be  
 7242 considered parts of this system.
- 7243 (e) The calculated margins of safety for the prototype connection  
 7244 design, steel core projection stability, overall buckling and other  
 7245 relevant subassembly test specimen brace construction  
 7246 details, excluding the gusset plate, for the prototype, shall equal  
 7247 or exceed those of the subassembly test specimen  
 7248 construction. If the qualification brace test specimen required in  
 7249 Section K3.3 was also tested including the subassembly  
 7250 requirements of this section, the lesser safety factor for overall  
 7251 buckling between that required in Section K3.3a(a) and that  
 7252 required in this section may be used.
- 7253 (f) Lateral bracing of the subassembly test specimen shall  
 7254 replicate the lateral bracing in the prototype.
- 7255 (g) The brace test specimen and the prototype shall be  
 7256 manufactured in accordance with the same quality control and  
 7257 assurance processes and procedures.

7259 Extrapolation beyond the limitations stated in this section is permitted  
 7260 subject to qualified peer review and approval by the authority having  
 7261 jurisdiction.

### 7262 **K3.3. Brace Test Specimen**

7263  
 7264 The brace test specimen shall replicate as closely as is practical the  
 7265 pertinent design, detailing, construction features and material  
 7266 properties of the prototype.

### 7267 **K3.3a. Design of Brace Test Specimen**

7268 The same documented design methodology shall be used for the brace  
 7269 test specimen and the prototype. The design calculations shall  
 7270 demonstrate, at a minimum, the following requirements:

- 7271 (a) The calculated margin of safety for stability against overall  
 7272 buckling for the prototype shall equal or exceed that of the  
 7273 brace test specimen.
- 7274 (b) The calculated margins of safety for the brace test specimen and  
 7275 the prototype shall account for differences in material  
 7276 properties, including yield and ultimate stress, ultimate  
 7277 elongation, and toughness.

### 7278 **K3.3b. Manufacture of Brace Test Specimen**

7279 The brace test specimen and the prototype shall be manufactured in  
 7280 accordance with the same quality control and assurance processes and  
 7281 procedures.

### 7282 **K3.3c. Similarity of Brace Test Specimen and Prototype**

7283 The brace test specimen shall meet the following requirements:

- 7284 (a) The cross-sectional shape and orientation of the steel core shall  
 7285 be the same as that of the prototype.
- 7286 (b) The axial yield strength of the steel core,  $P_{ysc}$ , of the brace test  
 7287 specimen shall not be less than 30% nor more than 120% of the  
 7288 prototype where both strengths are based on the core area,  $A_{sc}$ ,  
 7289 multiplied by the yield strength as determined from a coupon  
 7290 test.
- 7291 (c) The material for, and method of, separation between the steel  
 7292 core and the buckling restraining mechanism in the brace test  
 7293 specimen shall be the same as that in the prototype.

7294 Extrapolation beyond the limitations stated in this section is permitted  
 7295 subject to qualified peer review and approval by the authority having  
 7296 jurisdiction.

### 7297 **K3.3d. Connection Details**

7298 The connection details used in the brace test specimen shall represent  
7299 the prototype connection details as closely as practical.

7300 **K3.3e. Materials**

7301 **1. Steel Core**

7302 The following requirements shall be satisfied for the steel core  
7303 of the brace test specimen:

7304 (a) The specified minimum yield stress of the brace test  
7305 specimen steel core shall be the same as that of the  
7306 prototype.

7307 (b) The measured yield stress of the material of the steel  
7308 core in the brace test specimen shall be at least 90% of  
7309 that of the prototype as determined from coupon tests.

7310 (c) The specified minimum ultimate stress and strain of the  
7311 brace test specimen steel core shall not exceed those of  
7312 the prototype.

7313 **2. Buckling-Restraining Mechanism**

7314 Materials used in the buckling-restraining mechanism of the  
7315 brace test specimen shall be the same as those used in the  
7316 prototype.

7317 **K3.3f. Connections**

7318 The welded, bolted and pinned joints on the test specimen shall  
7319 replicate those on the prototype as close as practical.

7320 **K3.4. Loading History**

7321 **K3.4a. General Requirements**

7322 The test specimen shall be subjected to cyclic loads in accordance with  
7323 the requirements prescribed in Sections K3.4b and K3.4c. Additional  
7324 increments of loading beyond those described in Section K3.4c are  
7325 permitted. Each cycle shall include a full tension and full compression  
7326 excursion to the prescribed deformation.

7327 **K3.4b. Test Control**

7328 The test shall be conducted by controlling the level of axial or  
7329 rotational deformation,  $\Delta_b$ , imposed on the test specimen. As an  
7330 alternate, the maximum rotational deformation is permitted to be  
7331 applied and maintained as the protocol is followed for axial  
7332 deformation.

**K3.4c. Loading Sequence**

Loads shall be applied to the test specimen to produce the following deformations, where the deformation is the steel core axial deformation for the test specimen and the rotational deformation demand for the subassembly test specimen brace:

- (a) 2 cycles of loading at the deformation corresponding to  $\Delta_b = \Delta_{by}$
- (b) 2 cycles of loading at the deformation corresponding to  $\Delta_b = 0.50 \Delta_{bm}$
- (c) 2 cycles of loading at the deformation corresponding to  $\Delta_b = 1 \Delta_{bm}$
- (d) 2 cycles of loading at the deformation corresponding to  $\Delta_b = 1.5 \Delta_{bm}$
- (e) 2 cycles of loading at the deformation corresponding to  $\Delta_b = 2.0 \Delta_{bm}$
- (f) Additional complete cycles of loading at the deformation corresponding to  $\Delta_b = 1.5 \Delta_{bm}$  as required for the brace test specimen to achieve a cumulative inelastic axial deformation of at least 200 times the yield deformation (not required for the subassembly test specimen)

where

$\Delta_{bm}$  = value of deformation quantity,  $\Delta_b$ , at least equal to that corresponding to the design story drift, in. (mm)

$\Delta_{by}$  = value of deformation quantity,  $\Delta_b$ , at first yield of test specimen, in. (mm)

The design story drift shall not be taken as less than 0.01 times the story height for the purposes of calculating  $\Delta_{bm}$ . Other loading sequences are permitted to be used to qualify the test specimen when they are demonstrated to be of equal or greater severity in terms of maximum and cumulative inelastic deformation.

**K3.5. Instrumentation**

Sufficient instrumentation shall be provided on the test specimen to permit measurement or calculation of the quantities listed in Section K3.7.

**K3.6. Materials Testing Requirements****K3.6a. Tension Testing Requirements**

Tension testing shall be conducted on samples of steel taken from the same heat of steel as that used to manufacture the steel core. Tension test results from certified material test reports shall be reported but are prohibited in place of material specimen testing for the purposes of this Section. Tension test results shall be based upon testing that is conducted in accordance with Section K3.6b.

### **K3.6b. Methods of Tension Testing**

Tension testing shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM A6, ASTM A370 and ASTM E8, with the following exceptions:

- (a) The yield stress that is reported from the test shall be based upon the yield strength definition in ASTM A370, using the offset method of 0.002 strain.
- (b) The loading rate for the tension test shall replicate, as closely as is practical, the loading rate used for the test specimen.
- (c) The coupon shall be machined so that its longitudinal axis is parallel to the longitudinal axis of the steel core.

### **K3.7. Test Reporting Requirements**

For each test specimen, a written test report meeting the requirements of this Section shall be prepared. The report shall thoroughly document all key features and results of the test. The report shall include the following information:

- (a) A drawing or clear description of the test specimen, including key dimensions, boundary conditions at loading and reaction points, and location of lateral bracing, if any.
- (b) A drawing of the connection details showing member sizes, grades of steel, the sizes of all connection elements, welding details including filler metal, the size and location of bolt or pin holes, the size and grade of connectors, and all other pertinent details of the connections.
- (c) A listing of all other essential variables as listed in Sections K3.2 or K3.3.
- (d) A listing or plot showing the applied load or displacement history.
- (e) A plot of the applied load versus the deformation,  $\Delta_b$ . The method used to determine the deformations shall be clearly shown. The locations on the test specimen where the loads and deformations were measured shall be clearly identified.

(f) A chronological listing of test observations, including observations of yielding, slip, instability, transverse displacement along the test specimen and rupture of any portion of the test specimen and connections, as applicable.

(g) The results of the material specimen tests specified in Section K3.6.

(h) The manufacturing quality control and quality assurance plans used for the fabrication of the test specimen. These shall be included with the welding procedure specifications and welding inspection reports.

Additional drawings, data and discussion of the test specimen or test results are permitted to be included in the report.

### **K3.8. Acceptance Criteria**

At least one subassemblage test that satisfies the requirements of Section K3.2 shall be performed. At least one brace test that satisfies the requirements of Section K3.3 shall be performed. Within the required protocol range all tests shall satisfy the following requirements:

(a) The plot showing the applied load vs. displacement history shall exhibit stable, repeatable behavior with positive incremental stiffness.

(b) There shall be no rupture, brace instability, or brace end connection failure.

(c) For brace tests, each cycle to a deformation greater than  $\Delta_{by}$  the maximum tension and compression forces shall not be less than the nominal strength of the core.

(d) For brace tests, each cycle to a deformation greater than  $\Delta_{by}$  the ratio of the maximum compression force to the maximum tension force shall not exceed 1.5.

Other acceptance criteria are permitted to be adopted for the brace test specimen or subassemblage test specimen subject to qualified peer review and approval by the authority having jurisdiction.